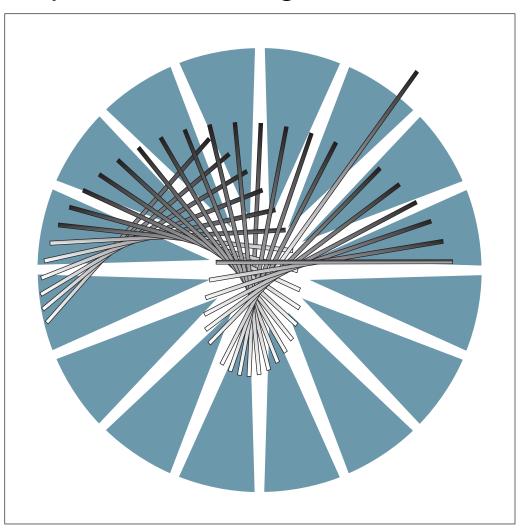


Planning Series:

Physical Planning



3745 Communication Controller Models A 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Models 900 and 950



Planning Series:

Physical Planning

Note!

Before using this information and the product it supports, be sure to read the general information under "Notices" on page xiii.

First Edition (July 1999)

This edition applies to the 3745 Communication Controller Models A and 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Models 900 and 950.

Order publications through your IBM representative or the IBM branch office serving your locality. Publications are not stocked at the address given below.

A form for readers' comments appears at the back of this publication. If the form has been removed, address your comments to:

Department CGFA
Design & Information Development
IBM Corporation
PO Box 12195
Research Triangle Park NC 27709
U.S.A.

When you send information to IBM, you grant IBM a nonexclusive right to use or distribute the information in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

© Copyright International Business Machines Corporation 1988, 1999. All rights reserved.

US Government Users Restricted Rights - Use, duplication or disclosure restricted by GSA ADP Schedule Contract with IBM Corp.

Contents

Figuresi
Tables
Notices
Electronic Emission Notices xiv
Industry Canada Class A Emission Compliance Statement xiv
Avis de conformité aux normes d'Industrie Canada xiv
European Union (EU) Mark of Conformity Statementxiv
Japanese Voluntary Control Council for Interference (VCCI) Statement xx
Korean Communications Statementxv
Taiwanese Class A Warning Statementxv
New Zealand Radiocommunications (Radio) Regulations xv
Notice to UK Users
Trademarks
Year 2000 Statement xvii
Safety xvii
About the 3745/3746 Planning Seriesxix
Who Should Use the 3745/3746 Planning Series xxi
Where to Find More Information
World Wide Web xxii
CD-ROM Online Documentation xxii
Accessing CD-ROM Information
How to Use the 3745/3746 Planning Series
Finding Your Way Around in the New Planning Series xxvii
Chapter 1. Physical Planning Details
Plan Views
Total Length
Total End Clearance
Total Width
3745 Model 17A with a 3746 Model 900 and Controller Expansion 2
3745 Model 17A with a 3746 Model 900 and Both Controller Expansions A
and B
Expansion
y
and One Controller Expansion
and Both Controller Expansions A and B
3746-950 with a Controller Expansion (FC 5023)
3746-950 with Two Controller Expansions (A and B)
3746-950 Standing Alone
Controller Expansion (FC 5023) Standing Alone
Service Clearances and Floor Loading
Ground Leakage Current
Physical Specifications
Dimensions
VVEI II II

Heat Output	
Airflow	
Acoustical Data	
Environmental Specifications	
Lightning Protection	
Electromagnetic Interference (3745, 3746-9x0, and Controller Expansion)	
Power Requirements	. 19
3745 Models 21A, 31A, 41A, and 61A, and 3746 Models A11, A12, L13,	
L14, and L15	
3745 Model 17A	
3746 Models 900 and 950	
ac Power at Each Inlet	
Maximum Inrush Current	
dc Power	
Controller Expansion (FC 5023)	
Multiaccess Enclosure	
Power Input	
Power Cord Characteristics	
3745 Model 17A	
3745 Models 21A, 31A, 41A, and 61A	
3746 Models 900 and 950	
Controller Expansion	
Power Cord Length	
Power Cord Plug and Receptacle	
U.S.A., Canada, and Mexico	
Japan	
Other Countries	
Country Frequency and Power Plug Identification	
Power Plug Types	. 29
Controller Expansion and LCB Grounding (Earthing)	. 30
Voltage Grounding	
Controller Expansion	
User-Supplied Rack	
Stand-Alone LCB	
Current Grounding	
3745 Customer Power Control Relay	
Line Interface Attachment Cables	
Line Connection Box	
LCB Specifications	
Dimensions	
Maximum Weight (with ARCs)	
Maximum Heat Output	
Service Processor Specifications	
System Unit Characteristics	
Desktop and Rack-Mountable (Type 6275) Model (FC 5053, FC 5050)	
Rack-Mountable (Type 7585) Model (FC 5052)	
Rack-Mountable (Type 3172) Model (FC 5021)	
Floor Standing (Type 9585) Tower Model (FC 5021)	
Desktop (Type 9577) Model (FC 5020)	
CD-ROM Drive Unit (FC 5051)	
Optical Disk Drive Unit (FC 5026)	
Color Display Characteristics	
6546-0BN Model G54	
6546-01N Model G52	39

RSF Modem	40
IBM 7858 Modem Characteristics	40
IBM 7857 Modem Characteristics	40
Hayes Modem Characteristics	41
IBM 7855 Model 10 Modem Characteristics	41
Service Processor Access Unit (SPAU)	41
Network Node Processor Specifications	41
Desktop and Rack-Mountable (Type 6275) Model (FC 5423, FC 5049)	42
Rack-Mountable NNP (Type 7585) Model (FC 5122)	42
Rack-Mountable NNP (Type 3172) Model (FC 5022)	43
Electrical Input	43
Ethernet Port Specifications (FC 5631 and FC 5632)	43
Ethernet Bridge Specifications	44
Maximum Ethernet Configuration	45
Controller Expansion: Internal Power Distribution	47
AC Outlet Distribution Boxes	47
Single AC Outlet Distribution Box Option	48
Dual AC Outlet Distribution Box Option (FC 5002)	49
Power Distribution in Controller Expansion	49
Service Processor Power Cords	50
RSF Modem	50
Controller Expansion: Physical Layout	50
Moving the Service Processor into the Controller Expansion	51
Display and Keyboard Installation Outside the Controller Expansion	51
Configuration with Service Processor (Type 6275), NNP (Type 6275) and	
MAE	52
Configuration with Service Processor and One NNP (Types 3172)	53
Configuration with Service Processor and One NNP (Types 3172) Configuration with Service Processor (Types 9577 and 9585) and One NNP	53
Configuration with Service Processor (Types 9577 and 9585) and One NNP	
Configuration with Service Processor (Types 9577 and 9585) and One NNP (Type 3172)	53 54
Configuration with Service Processor (Types 9577 and 9585) and One NNP (Type 3172)	54
Configuration with Service Processor (Types 9577 and 9585) and One NNP (Type 3172) Configuration with Service Processor (Types 3172 and 9585) and Two Network Node Processors (Type 3172)	
Configuration with Service Processor (Types 9577 and 9585) and One NNP (Type 3172) Configuration with Service Processor (Types 3172 and 9585) and Two Network Node Processors (Type 3172) Addition of a Multiaccess Enclosure to a Configuration with One NNP (Type	54 55
Configuration with Service Processor (Types 9577 and 9585) and One NNP (Type 3172) Configuration with Service Processor (Types 3172 and 9585) and Two Network Node Processors (Type 3172) Addition of a Multiaccess Enclosure to a Configuration with One NNP (Type 3172)	54 55 56
Configuration with Service Processor (Types 9577 and 9585) and One NNP (Type 3172) Configuration with Service Processor (Types 3172 and 9585) and Two Network Node Processors (Type 3172) Addition of a Multiaccess Enclosure to a Configuration with One NNP (Type 3172) Configurations with Ethernet Features	54 55 56 57
Configuration with Service Processor (Types 9577 and 9585) and One NNP (Type 3172) Configuration with Service Processor (Types 3172 and 9585) and Two Network Node Processors (Type 3172) Addition of a Multiaccess Enclosure to a Configuration with One NNP (Type 3172) Configurations with Ethernet Features Controller Expansion Inventory Charts	54 55 56 57 59
Configuration with Service Processor (Types 9577 and 9585) and One NNP (Type 3172) Configuration with Service Processor (Types 3172 and 9585) and Two Network Node Processors (Type 3172) Addition of a Multiaccess Enclosure to a Configuration with One NNP (Type 3172) Configurations with Ethernet Features Controller Expansion Inventory Charts Explanation of Cable Characteristics	54 55 56 57
Configuration with Service Processor (Types 9577 and 9585) and One NNP (Type 3172) Configuration with Service Processor (Types 3172 and 9585) and Two Network Node Processors (Type 3172) Addition of a Multiaccess Enclosure to a Configuration with One NNP (Type 3172) Configurations with Ethernet Features Controller Expansion Inventory Charts Explanation of Cable Characteristics Cables to be Ordered and Installed <a>	54 55 56 57 59 61
Configuration with Service Processor (Types 9577 and 9585) and One NNP (Type 3172) Configuration with Service Processor (Types 3172 and 9585) and Two Network Node Processors (Type 3172) Addition of a Multiaccess Enclosure to a Configuration with One NNP (Type 3172) Configurations with Ethernet Features Controller Expansion Inventory Charts Explanation of Cable Characteristics Cables to be Ordered and Installed <a> FC FC FC S	54 55 56 57 59 61 61 61
Configuration with Service Processor (Types 9577 and 9585) and One NNP (Type 3172) Configuration with Service Processor (Types 3172 and 9585) and Two Network Node Processors (Type 3172) Addition of a Multiaccess Enclosure to a Configuration with One NNP (Type 3172) Configurations with Ethernet Features Controller Expansion Inventory Charts Explanation of Cable Characteristics Cables to be Ordered and Installed <a> FC LIC Type <c></c>	54 55 56 57 59 61 61
Configuration with Service Processor (Types 9577 and 9585) and One NNP (Type 3172) Configuration with Service Processor (Types 3172 and 9585) and Two Network Node Processors (Type 3172) Addition of a Multiaccess Enclosure to a Configuration with One NNP (Type 3172) Configurations with Ethernet Features Controller Expansion Inventory Charts Explanation of Cable Characteristics Cables to be Ordered and Installed <a> FC LIC Type <c> Cable Lengths</c>	54 55 56 57 59 61 61 61
Configuration with Service Processor (Types 9577 and 9585) and One NNP (Type 3172) Configuration with Service Processor (Types 3172 and 9585) and Two Network Node Processors (Type 3172) Addition of a Multiaccess Enclosure to a Configuration with One NNP (Type 3172) Configurations with Ethernet Features Controller Expansion Inventory Charts Explanation of Cable Characteristics Cables to be Ordered and Installed <a> FC LIC Type <c> Cable Lengths Country <j> <k></k></j></c>	54 55 57 59 61 61 61 61 62
Configuration with Service Processor (Types 9577 and 9585) and One NNP (Type 3172) Configuration with Service Processor (Types 3172 and 9585) and Two Network Node Processors (Type 3172) Addition of a Multiaccess Enclosure to a Configuration with One NNP (Type 3172) Configurations with Ethernet Features Controller Expansion Inventory Charts Explanation of Cable Characteristics Cables to be Ordered and Installed <a> FC LIC Type <c> Cable Lengths Country <j> <k> How to Determine Cable Length</k></j></c>	54 55 57 59 61 61 61 61 62 62
Configuration with Service Processor (Types 9577 and 9585) and One NNP (Type 3172) Configuration with Service Processor (Types 3172 and 9585) and Two Network Node Processors (Type 3172) Addition of a Multiaccess Enclosure to a Configuration with One NNP (Type 3172) Configurations with Ethernet Features Controller Expansion Inventory Charts Explanation of Cable Characteristics Cables to be Ordered and Installed <a> FC LIC Type <c> Cable Lengths Country <j> <k> How to Determine Cable Length Cabling Identification</k></j></c>	54 55 56 57 59 61 61 61 61 62 62 62
Configuration with Service Processor (Types 9577 and 9585) and One NNP (Type 3172) Configuration with Service Processor (Types 3172 and 9585) and Two Network Node Processors (Type 3172) Addition of a Multiaccess Enclosure to a Configuration with One NNP (Type 3172) Configurations with Ethernet Features Controller Expansion Inventory Charts Explanation of Cable Characteristics Cables to be Ordered and Installed <a> FC LIC Type <c> Cable Lengths Country <j> <k> How to Determine Cable Length Cabling Identification Cable Weight</k></j></c>	54 55 56 57 59 61 61 61 62 62 62 62
Configuration with Service Processor (Types 9577 and 9585) and One NNP (Type 3172) Configuration with Service Processor (Types 3172 and 9585) and Two Network Node Processors (Type 3172) Addition of a Multiaccess Enclosure to a Configuration with One NNP (Type 3172) Configurations with Ethernet Features Controller Expansion Inventory Charts Explanation of Cable Characteristics Cables to be Ordered and Installed <a> FC LIC Type <c> Cable Lengths Country <j> <k> How to Determine Cable Length Cabling Identification Cable Weight Plenum Cables</k></j></c>	54 55 56 57 59 61 61 61 61 62 62 62 62 62
Configuration with Service Processor (Types 9577 and 9585) and One NNP (Type 3172) Configuration with Service Processor (Types 3172 and 9585) and Two Network Node Processors (Type 3172) Addition of a Multiaccess Enclosure to a Configuration with One NNP (Type 3172) Configurations with Ethernet Features Controller Expansion Inventory Charts Explanation of Cable Characteristics Cables to be Ordered and Installed <a> FC LIC Type <c> Cable Lengths Country <j> <k> How to Determine Cable Length Cabling Identification Cable Weight Plenum Cables Modems</k></j></c>	54 55 56 57 59 61 61 61 62 62 62 62 63
Configuration with Service Processor (Types 9577 and 9585) and One NNP (Type 3172) Configuration with Service Processor (Types 3172 and 9585) and Two Network Node Processors (Type 3172) Addition of a Multiaccess Enclosure to a Configuration with One NNP (Type 3172) Configurations with Ethernet Features Controller Expansion Inventory Charts Explanation of Cable Characteristics Cables to be Ordered and Installed <a> FC LIC Type <c> Cable Lengths Country <j> <k> How to Determine Cable Length Cabling Identification Cable Weight Plenum Cables Modems Cable Information</k></j></c>	54 55 56 57 59 61 61 61 61 62 62 62 62 62
Configuration with Service Processor (Types 9577 and 9585) and One NNP (Type 3172) Configuration with Service Processor (Types 3172 and 9585) and Two Network Node Processors (Type 3172) Addition of a Multiaccess Enclosure to a Configuration with One NNP (Type 3172) Configurations with Ethernet Features Controller Expansion Inventory Charts Explanation of Cable Characteristics Cables to be Ordered and Installed <a> FC LIC Type <c> Cable Lengths Country <j> <k> How to Determine Cable Length Cabling Identification Cable Weight Plenum Cables Modems Cable Information Channel Attachment Cables and Emergency Power-Off Cables</k></j></c>	54 55 57 59 61 61 61 62 62 62 62 63
Configuration with Service Processor (Types 9577 and 9585) and One NNP (Type 3172) Configuration with Service Processor (Types 3172 and 9585) and Two Network Node Processors (Type 3172) Addition of a Multiaccess Enclosure to a Configuration with One NNP (Type 3172) Configurations with Ethernet Features Controller Expansion Inventory Charts Explanation of Cable Characteristics Cables to be Ordered and Installed <a> FC LIC Type <c> Cable Lengths Country <j> <k> How to Determine Cable Length Cabling Identification Cable Weight Plenum Cables Modems Cable Information Channel Attachment Cables and Emergency Power-Off Cables (3745 Model 17A)</k></j></c>	54 55 57 59 61 61 61 62 62 62 62 62 63 64
Configuration with Service Processor (Types 9577 and 9585) and One NNP (Type 3172) Configuration with Service Processor (Types 3172 and 9585) and Two Network Node Processors (Type 3172) Addition of a Multiaccess Enclosure to a Configuration with One NNP (Type 3172) Configurations with Ethernet Features Controller Expansion Inventory Charts Explanation of Cable Characteristics Cables to be Ordered and Installed <a> FC LIC Type <c> Cable Lengths Country <j> <k> How to Determine Cable Length Cabling Identification Cable Weight Plenum Cables Modems Cable Information Channel Attachment Cables and Emergency Power-Off Cables (3745 Model 17A) 3745 Model 17A Channel Cabling Schematic</k></j></c>	54 55 57 59 61 61 61 62 62 62 62 63 64
Configuration with Service Processor (Types 9577 and 9585) and One NNP (Type 3172) Configuration with Service Processor (Types 3172 and 9585) and Two Network Node Processors (Type 3172) Addition of a Multiaccess Enclosure to a Configuration with One NNP (Type 3172) Configurations with Ethernet Features Controller Expansion Inventory Charts Explanation of Cable Characteristics Cables to be Ordered and Installed <a> FC LIC Type <c> Cable Lengths Country <j> <k> How to Determine Cable Length Cabling Identification Cable Weight Plenum Cables Modems Cable Information Channel Attachment Cables and Emergency Power-Off Cables (3745 Model 17A) 3745 Model 17A Channel Cabling Schematic Channel Attachment Cables and EPO Cables (3745 Models 21A, 31A, 41A</k></j></c>	54 55 56 57 59 61 61 61 62 62 62 62 63 64 64
Configuration with Service Processor (Types 9577 and 9585) and One NNP (Type 3172) Configuration with Service Processor (Types 3172 and 9585) and Two Network Node Processors (Type 3172) Addition of a Multiaccess Enclosure to a Configuration with One NNP (Type 3172) Configurations with Ethernet Features Controller Expansion Inventory Charts Explanation of Cable Characteristics Cables to be Ordered and Installed <a> FC LIC Type <c> Cable Lengths Country <j> <k> How to Determine Cable Length Cabling Identification Cable Weight Plenum Cables Modems Cable Information Channel Attachment Cables and Emergency Power-Off Cables (3745 Model 17A) 3745 Model 17A Channel Cabling Schematic</k></j></c>	54 55 57 59 61 61 61 62 62 62 62 62 63 64

ESCON Jumper Cables and Emergency Power-Off Cables (3746-9x0)	68
3746 Models 900 and 950 Channel Cabling Schematic	70
Service Processor and Network Node Processor Attachment Cables	71
RSF Modem	72
Hayes RSF Modem Part Number to Country Reference	
IBM 7857 RSF Modem Telephone Cables	
IBM 7855 RSF Modem Telephone Cables	
Token-Ring Attachment and High-Speed Line Attachment Cables (3745)	
Token-Ring (TIC3) and High-Speed Line (LIC12) Attachment Cables	, 4
	76
(3746-9x0)	
, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,	78
Line Interface Attachment (LIC) Cables (3745, 3746-L13/L15) (Part 2 of 3)	80
Line Interface Attachment (LIC) Cables (3745, 3746-L13/L15) (Part 3 of 3)	81
ISDN Attachment (LIC16) Cables (3746-900)	
Low- and Medium-Speed Line Attachment (LIC11) Cables (3746-9x0)	
Active Remote Connector (ARC) Assemblies (3746-9x0)	84
ARC Assemblies A	84
ARC Assemblies B	85
Cables for ARC Assemblies B	86
Plenum and X.21 Bis Cables for ARC Assemblies A and B	88
Multiaccess Enclosure Cables	90
EIA-232E/V.24 Fanout Cable (FC 3701)	
V.35 Fanout Cable (FC 3702)	
V.36 Fanout Cable (FC 3703)	
X.21 Fanout Cable (FC 3704)	
EIA-232E/V.24 Serial Interface Cable (FC 3705)	
EIA-232E/V.24 Direct Attach Cable (FC 3706)	
V.35 Serial Interface Cable (FC 3707)	
V.35 Serial Interface Cable - France (FC 3799)	
V.35 Direct Attach Cable (FC 3708)	
V.36 Serial Interface Cable (FC 3709)	
V.36 Direct Attach Cable (FC 3710)	
X.21 Serial Interface Cable (FC 3711)	91
X.21 Direct Attach Cable (FC 3712)	
Multipurpose RJ-45 Cable (FC 3713)	92
RJ-48 T1 ISDN PRI/Channelized T1 Cable (FC 3714)	92
E1 ISDN PRI/Channelized E1 Cable (FC 3715)	92
RJ-48 J1 ISDN PRI/Channelized J1 Cable (FC 3716)	92
RJ-48C ISDN PRI/Channelized T1 Cable (FC 3717)	92
RJ-48C ISDN PRI/Channelized E1 Cable (FC 3718)	92
Keyed RJ-48C ISDN PRI/Channelized J1 Cable (FC 3719)	
Parallel Channel Bus-and-Tag Upstream Cable (FC 3720)	
Parallel Channel Bus-and-Tag Downstream Cable (FC 3721)	
ATM MMF External Cable (FC 5710)	
ATM MMF External Cable (FC 5715)	
ATM SMF External Cable (FC 5720)	
·	
ATM SMF External Cable (FC 5725)	
ESCON Cable (Cable Group 3797)	
Other Cables	
Unshielded Twisted-Pair Cables for Token-Ring LAN Attachment (3746-9x0)	93
Token-Ring UTP Media Filter	
Category 5 UTP Cable	
Twisted-Pair Wire Connectors	95

Chapter 2. Familiarizing Yourself with the Installation Sheets	
Enclosure Examples	
Notes for the 3746-900 and 950 Enclosure Examples	
Legend	
3746-900 Basic Enclosure Example	
3746-900 Expansion Enclosure Example	
3746-950 Basic Enclosure Example	
3746-950 Expansion Enclosure Example	
3746-9X0 with Multiaccess Enclosure	100
Installation Sheets	100 102
Hardware Configuration Report	102
Cable List Examples	102
Example of Cables for the 3745 (HSS and TRA)	102
Example of the Cables for the 3745 (LIC Types 1 to 6)	103
Example of Cables for 3736-9x0 (ARCs)	103
Example of Cables for 3736-930 (ARCs)	104
	105
Line Group Examples	106
	100
Example for Token Ring	107
Example of 3746-900 Low/Medium Speed Line Group Information (LIC11)	109
Example of 3746-950 High Speed Line Group Information (LIC11)	109
LCB and ARC Example	110
Enclosure Physical Positions and Logical Addresses	111
CLP Logical Addresses	113
Examples of LIC Installation Sheets	114
Frame Identification	116
LIB Identification for Model 17A	117
Example TSST Installation Sheet	118
Legend	118
Legend for the Example Installation Sheets	121
Chapter 3. Plugging Sheets for 3745 and 3746	127
Why Plugging Sheets and Cable Labels Are Required	127
Preparing the Plugging Sheets for 3746 Low- and Medium-Speed Lines	
(LIC11)	128
Preparing the Plugging Sheets for 3746 High-Speed Lines (LIC12)	130
Preparing the Plugging Sheets for the 3746 Token-Ring Adapters	131
Preparing the Plugging Sheet for the Service Processor	132
Preparing the Plugging Sheet for the EPO Cables	132
Preparing LIC12, Token-Ring, and EPO Cable Labels	133
Preparing the LIC11, LCB, and ARC Cable Labels	134
Preparing the Plugging Sheets for 3745 and 3746-L13, -L14, -L15 Low- and	
Medium-Speed Lines (LIC Types 1 to 6)	136
Preparing the Plugging Sheets for 3745 High-Speed Lines	139
Preparing the Plugging Sheets for 3745 Ethernet Adapters	140
Plugging Sheets	141
Plugging Sheet for 3746 Low- and Medium-Speed Lines (LIC11)	142
Plugging Sheet for 3746 High-Speed Lines (LIC12)	143
Plugging Sheet for 3745 and 3746 Token-Ring Adapters	144
Plugging Sheet for 3745/3746 Service Processor	145
Plugging Sheet for 3746 EPO Cables	146

Plugging Sheet for 3745 and 3746 Low- and Medium-Speed Lines	
(LIC Types 1 to 4)	147
Plugging Sheet for 3745 and 3746 Low- and Medium-Speed Lines	
(LIC Types 5 and 6)	148
Plugging Sheet for 3745 High-Speed Lines	149
Plugging Diagram for 3745 Ethernet LAN Adapters	150
Fluggling Diagram for 3743 Ethemet EAN Adapters	130
List of Albandations	454
List of Abbreviations	151
Glossary	155
Bibliography	159
Customer Documentation for the 3745 (All Models), and 3746 (Model 900)	159
Additional Customer Documentation for the 3745 Models 130, 150, 160, 170,	
and 17A	165
Customer Documentation for the 3746 Model 950	166
Required Documentation	170
Related Documentation	170
Index	

Figures

1.	Side and Connector Ends for the Power Plugs	29
2.	Controller Expansion Ground Requirements	30
3.	User-Supplied Rack Ground Requirements	30
4.	User-Supplied Rack Ground Requirements	31
5.	Diagram of LIC11 and LIC12 Cables	33
6.	Controller Expansion or 19-inch User-Supplied Rack (Side View)	34
7.	Components of the Ethernet Port	44
8.	Maximum Configuration of Ethernet Bridges Allowed for One 3746	
	Network Node	46
9.	Power Plugging on a Single ac Outlet Distribution Box	48
10.	Power Plugging on Dual ac Outlet Distribution Boxes	49
11.	IEC-IEC Power Cord	49
12.	Controller Expansion with a service processor (Type 6275), Two NNPs	
	(Type 6275) and a MAE	52
13.	Right Side View of Controller Expansion with a service processor and a	
	Network Node Processor (Type 3172)	53
14.	Front View of Controller Expansion with a service processor and a	
	Network Node Processor (Type 3172)	53
15.	Front View of Controller Expansion with Tower Service Processor (Type	_
	9585)	54
16.	Front View of Controller Expansion with Desktop Service Processor (Type	_
17	9577) f Controller Fundacion with a continuous and Two	54
17.	Front View of Controller Expansion with a service processor and Two NNPs (Type 3172)	55
18.	Front View of Controller Expansion with a service processor, and One	50
10.	NNP (Type 3172)	56
19.	Rear View of Controller Expansion-A with One Ethernet Bridge Installed	57
20.	Rear View of Controller Expansion-B with Four Ethernet Bridges Installed	58
21.	Controller Expansion Inventory Chart (Front View)	59
22.	Controller Expansion Inventory Chart (Rear View)	60
23.	ESCON Jumper and EPO Cables	69
24.	Service Processor Attachment Cables (3745 Models 17A, 21A, 31A, 41A,	
	61A, and 3746-900/950)	71
25.	3745 Plenum or X.21 bis Cable Connected to an ARC Assembly	88
26.	EIA-232 Fanout Schematic	90
27.	IBM Token-Ring UTP Media Filter (Part Number 43G3875)	94
28.	Twisted-Pair 8-Pin Connector	95
29.	Base 3746-900 with Dual Token-Ring Connection to Multiaccess	
	Enclosure	100
30.	Multiaccess Enclosure with Dual Token-Ring Connections to the	
	3746-900 Base Frame	101
31.	3745 Cable Example Table	103
32.	Cross System Links and Line Group Table Example	108
33.	CLP Logical Addresses	113
34.	Installation Sheet for 3745 LIC Types 1 to 6	114
35.	Installation Sheet for 3745 17A LIC Types 1 to 6	115
36.	LIC Units (LIUs)	116
37.	Models 17A LIBs	117
38.	TSST Installation Sheet Example	118
39.	Physical Arrangement of LIC Areas — 3745 base frame	121

40.	Physical Arrangement of LIC Areas — Expansion Units 3746—L13,	
	—L14, —L15	122
41.	Arrangement of LIC Areas	122
42.	Port Numbers for Model 17A	124
43.	Example LIC11 Plugging Sheet	129
44.	Example LIC12 Plugging Sheet	130
45.	Example TIC3 Plugging Sheet	131
46.	Example of EPO Cables Plugging Sheet	132
47.	LIC11 Cabling and Labeling	135
48.	Example Plugging Sheet for LIC Types 1 to 4	137
49.	Example Plugging Sheet for LIC Types 5 and 6	138
50.	Example 3745 High-Speed Line Plugging Sheet	139
51.	Example Plugging Diagram for Ethernet Adapters	140

Tables

1.	Customer Tasks	. XXV
2.	Location of Old Planning Guide Chapters in New Planning Guides	xxvii
3.	Floor Loading an Service Clearances	. 13
4.	3745 and 3746-9x0 Environmental Specifications	. 17
5.	Receptacle Types Needed in the U.S.A., Canada, and Mexico	. 24
6.	Receptacle Types Needed in Japan	. 25
7.	Receptacle Types Needed in Other Countries	. 25
8.	Country Frequency and Power Plug Identification	. 26
9.	Where Components of the Ethernet Bridge Are Installed	. 43
10.	Part Numbers for Ethernet Bridge Cables	
11.	Part Numbers for TIC3 Cables Greater than 9 m (30 feet)	
12.	ac Power Outlets and Fuses	. 47
13.	Hayes Modem P/Ns	
14.	Hayes Modem P/Ns	
15.	IBM 7857 Modem Cables	
16.	IBM 7855 Modem Cables	
17.	ARC Assemblies A	
18.	ARC Assemblies B and Their Cables	
19.	Cables for ARC Assemblies B	
20.	3745 Plenum Cables for ARC Assemblies	
21.	3745 V.24/X.21 Bis Cables for ARC Assemblies	
22.	Physical Positions and Logical Addresses Relationship	111
23.	Physical Positions and Logical Addresses Relationship, Second	
	Expansion Enclosure	112
24.	Customer Documentation for the 3745 Models X10 and X1A, and 3746	
	Model 900	159
25.	Additional Customer Documentation for the 3745 Models 130 to 17A .	165
26.	Customer Documentation for the 3746 Model 950	166

Notices

References in this publication to IBM products, programs, or services do not imply that IBM intends to make these available in all countries in which IBM operates. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only IBM's product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any of IBM's intellectual property rights may be used instead of the IBM product, program, or service. Evaluation and verification of operation in conjunction with other products, except those expressly designated by IBM, are the user's responsibility.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter in this document. The furnishing of this document does not give you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM Director of Licensing IBM Corporation North Castle Drive Armonk, NY 10504-1785 U.S.A.

For license inquiries regarding double-byte (DBCS) information, contact the IBM Intellectual Property Department in your country or send inquiries, in writing, to:

IBM World Trade Asia Corporation Licensing 2-31 Roppongi 3-chome, Minato-ku Tokyo 106, Japan

The following paragraph does not apply to the United Kingdom or any other country where such provisions are inconsistent with local law:

INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some states do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time without notice.

This information is for planning purposes only. The information herein is subject to change before the products described become available.

Electronic Emission Notices

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) Statement

Note: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instruction manual, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference, in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

Properly shielded and grounded cables and connectors must be used in order to meet FCC emission limits. IBM is not responsible for any radio or television interference caused by using other than recommended cables and connectors or by unauthorized changes or modifications to this equipment. Unauthorized changes or modifications could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Industry Canada Class A Emission Compliance Statement

This Class A digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Avis de conformité aux normes d'Industrie Canada

Cet appareil numérique de la classe A est conforme à la norme NMB-003 du Canada.

European Union (EU) Mark of Conformity Statement

This product is in conformity with the protection requirements of EU Council Directive 89/336/EEC on the approximation of the laws of the Member States relating to electromagnetic compatibility. IBM cannot accept responsibility for any failure to satisfy the protection requirements resulting from a non-recommended modification of the product, including the fitting of non-IBM option cards.

This product has been tested and found to comply with the limits for Class A Information Technology Equipment according to CISPR 22/European Standard EN 55022. The limits for Class A equipment were derived for commercial and industrial environments to provide reasonable protection against interference with licensed communication equipment.

Attention: This is a Class A product. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

Zulassungsbescheinigung laut dem Deutschen Gesetz über die elektromagnetische Verträglichkeit von Geräten (EMVG) vom 30. August 1995 (bzw. der EMC EG Richlinie 89/336).

Dieses Gerät ist berechtigt, in Übereinstimmung mit dem Deutschen EMVG das EG-Konformitätszeichen - CE - zu führen.

Verantwortlich für die Konformitätserklärung nach Paragraph 5 des EMVG ist die IBM Deutschland Informationssysteme GmbH, 70548 Stuttgart.

Informationen in Hinsicht EMVG Paragraph 3 Abs. (2) 2:

Das Gerät erfüllt die Schutzanforderungen nach EN 50082-1 und EN 55022 Klasse A.

EN 55022 Klasse A Geräte müssen mit folgendem Warnhinweis versehen werden: "Warnung: Dies ist eine Einrichtung der Klasse A. Diese Einrichtung kann im Wohnbereich Funkstörungen verursachen; in diesem Fall kann vom Betreiber verlangt werden, angemessene Maßnahmen durchzuführen und dafür aufzukommen."

EN 50082-1 Hinweis:

"Wird dieses Gerät in einer industriellen Umgebung betrieben (wie in EN 50082-2 festgelegt), dann kann es dabei eventuell gestört werden. In solch einem Fall ist der Abstand bzw. die Abschirmung zu der industriellen Störquelle zu vergrößern."

Anmerkung:

Um die Einhaltung des EMVG sicherzustellen, sind die Geräte, wie in den IBM Handbüchern angegeben, zu installieren und zu betreiben.

Japanese Voluntary Control Council for Interference (VCCI) Statement

This product is a Class A Information Technology Equipment and conforms to the standards set by the Voluntary Control Council for Interference by Technology Equipment (VCCI). In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

この装置は、情報処理装置等電波障害自主規制協議会(VCCI)の基準に基づくクラスA情報技術装置です。この装置を家庭環境で使用すると電波妨害を引き起こすことがあります。この場合には使用者が適切な対策を講ずるよう要求されることがあります。

Korean Communications Statement

Please note that this device has been certified for business purpose with regard to electromagnetic interference. If you find this is not suitable for your use, you may exchange it for one of residential use.

A급 기기(업무용)

이 기기는 업무용으로 전자파적합등록을 받은 기기이오나 판매자 또는 이용자는 이점을 주의하시기 바라며, 만약 금입학였을 때에는 구입한 곳에서 가정용으로 교환하시기

Taiwanese Class A Warning Statement

警告使用者: 這是甲類的資訊產品,在 居住的環境中使用時,可 能會造成射頻干擾,在這 種情況下,使用者會被要 求採取某些適當的對策。

New Zealand Radiocommunications (Radio) Regulations

Attention: This is a Class A product. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case the user may be required to take adequate measures.

Notice to UK Users

The IBM 3746 Model 900 and IBM 3746 Model 950 are manufactured according to the International Safety Standard IEC950 and, as such, is approved in the UK under the General Approval number NS/G/1234/J/100003.

The Active Remote Couplers (ARCs) and the X.21 Interface, housed within the 3746 Model 900 and 3746 Model 950, are approved separately, each having their own independent approval number. These interface adapters, supplied by IBM, do not contain excessive voltages. An excessive voltage is one which exceeds 42.4 V peak ac or 60 V dc. They interface with the 3746 Model 900 or 3746 Model 950, using Safe Extra Low Voltages only.

In order to maintain the independent approval of the IBM adapters, it is essential that other optional cards, not supplied by IBM, do not use mains voltages or any other excessive voltages. Seek advice from a competent engineer before installing other adapters not supplied by IBM.

Trademarks

The following terms are trademarks of IBM Corporation in the United States, or other countries, or both:

AIX MVS/ESA
ACF/VTAM MVS/XA
Advanced Peer-to-Peer Networking Nways

APPN Operating System/2

AS/400 OS/2 CICS OS/390

DB2 Processor Resource/Systems Manager

Enterprise Systems Connection RETAIN
Architecture RS/6000
Extended Services S/370
ESCON S/390

ESCON XDF S/390 Parallel Enterprise Server

 ES/3090
 System/36

 ES/9000
 System/370

 IBM
 System/390

 LPDA
 SystemView

 Multiprise
 VM/ESA

 MVS
 VSE/ESA

 VTAM

NetView and Tivoli are trademarks of Tivoli Systems, Inc. in the United States, or other countries, or both.

Freelance is a trademark of Lotus Development Corporation in the United States, or other countries, or both.

Java, all Java-based trademarks and logos, and Solaris are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

Microsoft, Windows, Windows NT, and the Windows logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Intel and Pentium are registered trademarks of Intel Corporation in the U.S. and other countries.

UNIX is a registered trademark in the United States and other countries licensed exclusively through X/Open Company Limited.

Other company, product, and service names may be trademarks or service marks of others.

Year 2000 Statement

This product is Year 2000 ready. When used in accordance with its associated documentation, it is capable of correctly processing, providing, and/or receiving date data within and between the 20th and 21st centuries, provided all other products (for example, software, hardware, and firmware) used with the product properly exchange accurate date data with it.

For more information, refer to:

http://www.ibm.com/year2000

The 3745 and 3746 controllers require a certain level of microcode to be Year 2000 ready. For more detailed information, access the URL listed above and click Product Readiness.

Safety

This product meets IBM Safety standards.

For more information, see the following manual: IBM 3745 Communication Controller All Models, IBM 3746 Expansion Unit Model 900, IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Model 950 Safety Information, GA33-0400.

About the 3745/3746 Planning Series

The 3745/3746 Planning Series is designed to help you plan the installation and configuration of the IBM 3745 Communication Controller Models A and IBM 3746 Nways® Multiprotocol Controller Models 900 and 950. The Planning Series also describes the information you must gather to install and integrate 3746 Controllers into Advanced Peer-to-Peer Networking®/High Performance Routing (APPN®/HPR) and Internet Protocol (IP) environments.

The *3745/3746 Planning Series* consists of a set of Planning Guides that replace, update and obsolete the *Planning Guide*, GA33-0457.

Important:

- 1. If you already use the existing *Planning Guide*, IBM recommends that you read the new *Planning Series* to learn about new features and to become familiar with the new structure in which planning information is presented.
- 2. When planning the installation and configuration of 3746 controllers you must use the *IBM 3745 Communication Controller Models A, IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller, Models 900 and 950: Overview* along with the *3745/3746 Planning Series* to have all required information.
- 3. The 3745/3746 documentation is updated periodically in response to your needs and to reflect product evolutions. Because of the time delay necessary to update hard media (books that are printed and available on CD-ROM), it is highly recommended that you check periodically the IBM 3745/3746 documentation on the Internet for the latest versions of the documents (refer to "World Wide Web" on page xxiii).

Refer to the appropriate Planning Guide for the parameters to be customized for the installation and operation of:

- 3745 Communication Controller Models A
- 3746 Models 900 and 950
- Network Node Processor (NNP)
- Multiaccess Enclosure (MAE)
- Service processor
- Distributed Console Access Facility (DCAF) and TME 10 remote consoles
- Java Console
- · Network management.

When you define 3746 resources controlled by NCP, record the information in the worksheets provided for the Controller Configuration and Management (*CCM User's Guide*, SH11-3081) application.

The 3745/3746 Planning Series consists of the following planning guides:

Overview, Installation, and Integration, GA27-4234

Starts with a general overview of 3746 planning and then explains the various 3745 and 3746 installation and upgrade scenarios.

The guide also explains the options available for the basic integration of the controller and its service processor into your network. There are MOSS-E worksheets for these options, which are to be filled out for the

IBM service representative who does the actual controller installation or upgrade. The appendixes:

- Shows the screens of the MOSS-E service processor customization function
- Support offered by each level of the 3746 Licensed Internal Code.

ESCON Channels, GA27-4237

After an overview of ESCON® and the adapters, the guide explains the configuration and tuning. This can be done with either the ESCON Generation Assistant (EGA) tool or the Controller Configuration Management (CCM) tool.

The guide also includes examples of various types of ESCON configurations.

Note: For information about using ESCON adapters on the MAE, refer to the Multiaccess Enclosure Planning guide.

Token Ring and Ethernet, GA27-4236

Helps you with the configuration and definitions of your 3746 Network Node token-ring adapters (TRAs) for APPN/HPR-, IP-, and NCP-controlled traffic.

There are MOSS-E worksheets for the token-ring information needed by the IBM service representative to install or update your machine.

Although no longer available from IBM, the guide explains 3746 Ethernet support and Ethernet adapter configuration.

The token-ring (IEEE 802.5) and Ethernet (IEEE 802.3) standards are discussed in the appendixes.

Note: For Multiaccess Enclosure Ethernet information, refer to the Multiaccess Enclosure Planning guide.

Serial Line Adapters, GA27-4235

Starts with an overview of the serial line adapters. Next X.25, frame relay, PPP, and SDLC support are covered.

The two ways that the 3746 supports ISDN (LIC16 adapter¹ and terminal adapters) are explained, including how ISDN lines can be used as backups for other types of lines.

There is an appendix that gives the frame-relay support in each NCP level since frame-relay was introduced in NCP Version 6.

Note: For Multiaccess Enclosure ISDN information, refer to the Multiaccess Enclosure Planning guide.

Physical Planning, GA27-4238

Gives information to help you plan the physical site used by the 3745/3746s frames, service processor, and network node processor: the physical dimensions, electrical characteristics, and so on. It also gives this information for the various components of the 3745/3646, such as the Multiaccess Enclosure, Controller Extension, LICs, LCBs, ARCs, and so on.

No longer being manufactured

The cable descriptions include feature codes (FCs) and part numbers used when ordering them.

The guide includes and explains the controller installation sheets, which show what IBM has installed on your machines.

Plugging sheets for keeping track of your installed LICs, ARCs, and cables are provided along with examples and explanations of their use.

Note: This type of information for the Multiaccess Enclosure is in the *Multiaccess Enclosure Planning* guide.

Management Planning, GA27-4239

Starts with a management overview covering:

- NetView®
- · Performance Management
- Service processor
- Network Node Processor
- · APPN Topology Integrator.

Then there are chapters about:

- APPN/HPR Network Node management
- NetView Performance Monitor
- Remote console support
- · IBM Remote Support Facility
- 3746 IP router management
- Multiaccess Enclosure APPN/HPR Network Node management
- X.25 network.

There are MOSS-E worksheets for the network management parameters needed by the IBM service representative to install or upgrade your machine.

The guide explains the use of the MOSS-E 'Service Processor Customization'.

There is an example of ESCON management information base (MIB) definitions.

Note: For Multiaccess Enclosure management information, refer to the *Multiaccess Enclosure Planning* guide.

Multiaccess Enclosure Planning, GA27-4240

Provides information about the Multiaccess Enclosure and its adapters (ATM, ESCON, and so on) and how to configure them.

For information about:

- Multiaccess Enclosure APPN/HPR Network Node management, refer to the 3745/3746 Planning Series: Management Planning
- Physical site planning and the cables, refer to the *3745/3746* Planning Series: Physical Planning.

Protocols Description, GA27-4241

Is an in depth description of these protocols used by the 3746:

- APPN/HPR
- IP.

The detailed discussions of how the 3746 and Multiaccess Enclosure support these protocols help you understand the purpose of the protocol

parameter definitions and what types of information are needed for the most efficient operation of your 3745/3746-connected networks.

CCM Planning Worksheets, (Online)

These example worksheets for the 3746 and MAE can be used to plan the actual definitions of the many CCM parameters you need to configure your 3746.

This guides is available (in .pdf format) on the Internet at http://www.networking.ibm.com/did/3746bks.html#Customer

Who Should Use the 3745/3746 Planning Series

The 3745/3746 Planning Series is intended for network planners, network specialists, and system programmers responsible for collecting the information required for the installation and network integration of 3745 Communication Controller Models A and 3746 Expansion Unit Model 900 in an SNA environment, as well as the 3746-950 and 3746-900 as APPN/HPR network nodes and IP routers.

Where to Find More Information

While planning a migration, you must use the following documents in addition to the 3745/3746 Planning Series guides:

- IBM 3745 Communication Controller Models A and 170, 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Models 900 and 950: Overview, GA33-0180
- IBM 3745 Communication Controller All Models, 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Model 900: Console Setup Guide, SA33-0158 (This guide contains information about remote console access to 3745/3746-900s via an SNA/subarea, APPN, or TCP/IP path and using a modem.)

Also, you may need to use the following additional documents:

- IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Model 900 and 950: Controller Configuration and Management: User's Guide, SH11-3081 (IBM recommends that you prepare controller definitions before installing a 3746. To obtain a stand-alone version of the Controller Configuration and Management that runs on an OS/2® workstation, contact your IBM marketing representative.)
- 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Model 950: User's Guide, SA33-0356. (This guide contains information about routine operations, installing and testing the communication line adapters, service processor, and remote consoles.)
- Planning for Integrated Networks, SC31-8062.

Be sure to use the latest editions of these documents. This will ensure that you have up-to-date and complete information about the 3746 controllers.

The following IBM International Technical Support Organization redbooks provide useful information about 3746 implementation:

- APPN Architecture and Product Implementations Tutorial, GG24-3669
- IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Model 950 and IBM Model 900: APPN Implementation Guide, GG24-2536
- Subarea Network to APPN Network Migration Guide, SG24-4656

 IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Model 950 and IBM Model 900: IP Implementation Guide, SG24-4845 (an IBM redbook).

Be sure to see the other relevant documents listed in the bibliography at the back of this guide.

World Wide Web

You can access the latest news and information about IBM network products, customer service and support, and information about microcode upgrades via the Internet at

http://www.ibm.com/

The latest versions of the Planning Series and other 3745/3746 documentation are available (in PDF format) on the Internet at:

http://www.networking.ibm.com/did/3746bks.html#Customer

CD-ROM Online Documentation

Starting with engineering change F12380, the Licensed Internal Code (LIC) is shipped on a CD-ROM. The complete 3745/3746 documentation set is also included on the CD-ROM.

Examples: 3745 Model A and 3746 Planning Series, 3746 NNP and Service Processor Installation and Maintenance Guides, CCM User's Guide, 3746-950 User's Guide, and others. Refer to the bibliography for the complete name and form number of the books.

3745/3746 documentation is in PDF format. Acrobat Reader for OS/2 is included on the CD-ROM to allow you to read the .PDF files and print all or part of a book.

Accessing CD-ROM Information

To access the CD-ROM from a service processor equipped with a CD-ROM drive, do the following:

- **Step** 1. Install the CD-ROM in the service processor CD-ROM drive.
- Step 2. In the MOSS-E main window, open the View menu and select Information.
- **Step 3.** Double click **CD-ROM documentation**. Netscape Navigator automatically opens and displays the documentation home page.
- **Step 4.** Click on any highlighted text (blue and underlined) to go to the material that interests you:
 - a. Click **Documentation** to access 3745/3746 books.
 - b. Click the icon marked PDF that corresponds to the item that interests you.

The Acrobat Reader automatically opens and displays the file in the full screen mode. Use the Page Up and Page Down keys to move through the document.

Press Esc to display the Reader menus that allow you to print all or part of the file.

When you close the Acrobat Reader, you return to the Netscape Navigator browser.

When you close the browser, you return to the MOSS-E Documentation menu.

Each document file has one or more of the following identifiers:

- Date
- Form number
- Engineering change level
- · Revision code.

Check these identifiers on future releases of the CD-ROM to see if the documents that you use have been updated.

How to Use the 3745/3746 Planning Series

Your Responsibility as a Customer -

You are responsible for performing the tasks listed in Table 1. These tasks are not performed by IBM personnel as part of the machine installation and basic operations. They can, however, be performed by IBM on a fee basis.

Task	Where to Find Information
Network design:	Network design is not covered in this book. Refer to the following IBM books for SNA, APPN/HPR, and IP network planning guidance:
	Planning for Integrated Networks, SC31-8062IBM redbooks:
	 Subarea Network to APPN Network Migration Guide, SG24-4656
	 IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Model 950 and IBM Model 900: APPN Implementation Guide, GG24-2536
	 IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Model 950 and IBM Model 900: IP Implementation Guide, SG24-4845
	 IBM Nways 2216 Multiaccess Connector Description, SG24-4957
	 IBM 2216 Multiaccess Connector ESCON Solutions, SG24-2137.
Physical planning:	"Physical Planning Details" chapter in the 3745/3746 Plann
Before the IBM service representative arrives to install your controller, make sure that you have met the necessary requirements for the following:	Series: Physical Planning
 Electric power Floor space with service clearances Space for the cables The RSF switched line The Controller Expansion (FC 5023) Other components (such as the service processor). 	
Controller hardware configuration definitions:	This input is necessary for the IBM ordering system (CF3745)
	For more information, refer to the 3745/3746 Planning Series Physical Planning.

Table 1 (Page 2 of 3). Customer Tasks		
Task	Where to Find Information	
Software definitions and tuning:	Refer to:	
ESCON port, host link, and station definitions; ESCON resource, TCP/IP, and	"ESCON Adapters" chapter in the 3745/3746 Planning Series: ESCON Channels	
VTAM® tuning	"ESCON Channel Adapter" chapter in the 3745/3746 Planning Series: Multiaccess Enclosure Planning	
	"ESCON Configuration Examples" chapter in the 3745/3746 Planning Series: ESCON Channels	
 Token-ring port and station definitions; PU and LU maximum limits; port sharing with NCP-controlled traffic; duplicate addresses; token-ring APPN, IP, and/or NCP resource tuning and VTAM tuning 	"Token-Ring Adapters" chapter in the 3745/3746 Planning Series: Token Ring and Ethernet	
Serial line (SDLC, PPP, frame relay, and X.25) port and station definitions; location	"Serial Line Adapters" chapter in the 3745/3746 Planning Series: Serial Line Adapters	
of CLPs, LICs, LCBs, and ARCs; maximum CLA line connectivity; CLP backups	"3746 SDLC Support" chapter in the 3745/3746 Planning Series: Serial Line Adapters	
 Multiaccess Enclosure: hardware planning and configuration; software configuration and tuning 	3745/3746 Planning Series: Multiaccess Enclosure Planning	
and turning	3745/3746 Planning Series: Physical Planning	
Use of the Controller Configuration and Management (CCM) application.	IBM Controller Configuration and Management User's Guide, SH11-3081.	
	Also see:	
	IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Model 950 and IBM Model 900: APPN Implementation Guide, GG24-2536 (an IBM redbook)	
	IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Model 950 and IBM Model 900: IP Implementation Guide, SG24-4845 (an IBM redbook).	
Filling out:	Refer to:	
3746 plugging sheets To keep a record of the processors and couplers (and their addresses) installed in the 3746 frame.	"Plugging Sheets for 3745 and 3746" chapter in the 3745/3746 Planning Series: Physical Planning	
CCM User's Guide, SH11-3081 worksheets To plan the 3746 and MAE logical resource definitions. They can then be used when configuring the 3746 and MAE via the CCM.	3745/3746 Planning Series: CCM Planning Worksheets	

Table 1 (Page 3 of 3). Customer Tasks				
Task	Where to Find Information			
NetView definitions in VTAM, the MOSS-E, NPM, CCM, NetView/360, NetView for AIX for:	Refer to:			
APPN traffic	"3746 Management Overview" chapter in the 3745/3746 Planning Series: Management Planning			
IP traffic NetView alert path.	"3746 APPN/HPR Network Node Management" chapter in the 3745/3746 Planning Series: Management Planning			
	"3746 IP Router Management" chapter in the 3745/3746 Planning Series: Management Planning.			
Controller, service processor, and network node processor definitions. For example:	Refer to "Controller and Service Processor Integration" chapter in the 3745/3746 Planning Series: Overview, Installation, and Integration.			
 Link IPL port information Password management NetView alert reporting path definitions DCAF LU definitions Ethernet port definitions for SNMP Service processor token ring and IP LAN addresses. 	Fill out the worksheets in the various <i>Planning Series</i> guides. These worksheets are used by the IBM service representative during installation.			
Remote console definitions (using DCAF):	Refer to:			
Ensure that the necessary hardware and software is available for the type of console attachment chosen	"Remote Customer Consoles" chapter in the 3745/3746 Planning Series: Management Planning			
Service processor definitions for DCAF	• For the 3746-900, refer to the 3745 Console Setup Guide, SA33-0158			
DCAF installation and configuration on the remote console.	 For the 3746-950, refer to the IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Model 950 User's Guide, SA33-0356. 			
Connection to the IBM remote support facility (RSF):	Refer to "Connecting to the IBM Remote Support Facility" chapter in the 3745/3746 Planning Series: Management Planning			
Service processor connection (modem) definitions				
Customer definitions for RSF records.				
Problem determination through the MOSS-E and NetView	For the 3746-900, refer to: • Problem Analysis Guide accessed online from the MOSS-E • 3745 Models A: Alert Reference Guide, SA33-0175 • 3745 All Models: Advanced Operators Guide, SA33-0097.			

Finding Your Way Around in the New Planning Series

If you are familiar with the layout of the old 3745 Communication Controller Models A and 3746 Models 900 and 950: Planning Guide, GA33-0457, Table 2 should help you find which of the eight new books of the planning series contains the information that you need.

Note: Some of the chapters in the Planning Guide have been split into two or more new chapters in one or more new guides.

Old Planning Guide		New Planning Series Book	
Chapter	Chapter Name	Chapter	Guide Name
1	3745 and 3746 General Information		Not included in the new guides
2	APPN/HPR Overview	1	Protocols Description
3	Internet Protocol (IP) Overview	2	Protocols Description
4	3746 ATM Support	4	Multiaccess Enclosure Planning
5	Token-Ring/802.5	В	Token Ring and Ethernet
6	Ethernet Overview	С	Token Ring and Ethernet
7	Frame Relay Overview	4,5	Serial Line Adapters
8	Point-to-Point Protocol (PPP) Overview	4	Serial Line Adapters
9	X.25 Overview	2,3,5 7	Serial Line Adapters Management Planning
10	ISDN Adapters	8	Serial Line Adapters
11	ESCON Overview	1	ESCON Channels
12	3745 and 3746 Installation and Upgrade Scenarios	2	Overview, Installation, and Integration
13	Configuration Scenarios	6	Multiaccess Enclosure Planning
14	3746 Planning Overview	1	Overview, Installation, and Integration
15	ESCON Adapters	1,2,3	ESCON Channels
16	Token-Ring Adapters	1,2,3	Token Ring and Ethernet
17	Ethernet Adapters	4,5	Token Ring and Ethernet
18	Serial Line Adapters	1	Serial Line Adapters
19	3746 SDLC Support	3,4	Serial Line Adapters
20	Multiaccess Enclosure	1	Multiaccess Enclosure Planning
21	Multiaccess Enclosure Adapters Overview	2	Multiaccess Enclosure Planning
22	ESCON Channel Adapter	8	Multiaccess Enclosure Planning
23	Multiaccess Enclosure ISDN Support	5	Multiaccess Enclosure Planning
24	3746 Configuration Overview		Not included in the new guides
25	Welcome to the CCM		Not included in the new guides
26	Multiaccess Enclosure Configuration	7	Multiaccess Enclosure Planning
27	3746 Base Frame ESCON Configuration Examples	1	ESCON Channels
28	Configuring the MAE ESCON Channel Adapter	8	Multiaccess Enclosure Planning

Table 2 (Page 2 of 2). Location of Old Planning Guide Chapters in New Planning Guides					
Old Planning Guide		New Planning Series Book			
Chapter	Chapter Name	Chapter	Guide Name		
29	3746 Management Overview	1	Management Planning		
30	3746 APPN/HRP Network Node Management	2	Management Planning		
31	3746 IP Router Management	6	Management Planning		
32	MAE APPN/HRP Network Node Management	2	Management Planning		
33	MAE IP Router Management	6	Management Planning		
34	Controller and Service Processor	3	Overview, Installation, and Integration		
35	Customer Consoles and DCAF	4 1 1	Management Planning Overview, Installation, and Integration Token Ring and Ethernet		
36	Connecting to the IBM Remote Support Facility	5	Management Planning		
37	Performance Management with NetView Performance Monitor	3	Management Planning		
37	3746 IP Router Management	6	Management Planning		
38	MOSS-E Worksheets for Controller Installation (3745)	A A A	Overview, Installation, and Integration Management Planning Token Ring and Ethernet		
39	Parameter Cross-Reference Table	В	Overview, Installation, and Integration		
40	CCM Worksheets for Controller Configuration Definitions	1	CCM Planning Worksheets (online)		
41	Multiaccess Enclosure Worksheets	2	CCM Planning Worksheets (online)		
42	Familiarizing Yourself with the Installation Sheets	2	Physical Planning		
43	Plugging Sheets for the 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller	3	Physical Planning		
44	Physical Planning Details	1	Physical Planning		
А	3746-9x0 Microcode Levels (EC)	D	Overview, Installation, and Integration		
В	ESCOM MIB	А	Management Planning		
С	MOSS-E Service Processor Customization Function	С	Overview, Installation, and Integration		

Chapter 1. Physical Planning Details

This chapter contains the physical planning information needed for the:

- 3745 Communication Controller Models 17A, 21A, 31A, 41A, and 61A
- 3746 Expansion Units Models A11, A12, L13, L14 and L15

Note: 3745 Models 21A and 41A and 3746 Models A11, A12, L13, L14 and L15 are no longer available from IBM.

- 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Models 900 and 950
- Controller Expansion (FC 5023).

Plan Views

The figures are not drawn to scale. The measurements shown in parentheses are in inches.

Your machine configuration may not exactly match one of the plan views on the following pages.

Total Length

The minimum total length of your configuration is the sum of:

- All the frame lengths
 plus
- 2. The floor loading security clearance (the total end clearance: X + Y) plus
- 3. 60 mm (2.7 in.) for the two side covers.

Total End Clearance

As a general rule, the total end clearance (X + Y) can be distributed on either side of your configuration in any amount. For example, if X + Y = 100 mm, then X can be from 0 to 100 mm with the remaining clearance given to Y.

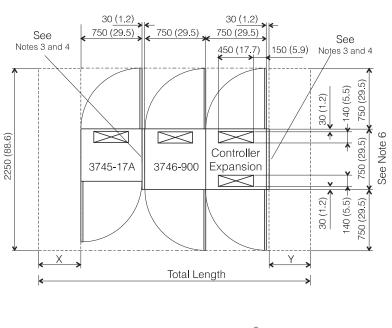
Total Width

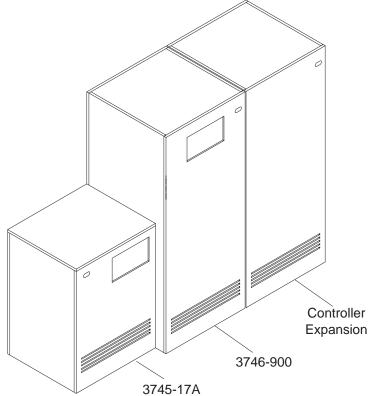
As a general rule, the front-to-rear service clearance is 2250 mm (88.6 in.).

The exception to this rule is when either a 3746-900 (or 3746-950) or Controller Expansion (or both) is installed. These frames have larger doors (750 mm) than the other frames; therefore, adding 50 mm (2.0 in.) in front and 50 mm in the back makes it easier to open and close the doors.

3745 Model 17A with a 3746 Model 900 and Controller Expansion

For the notes in the following diagram, refer to page 7.

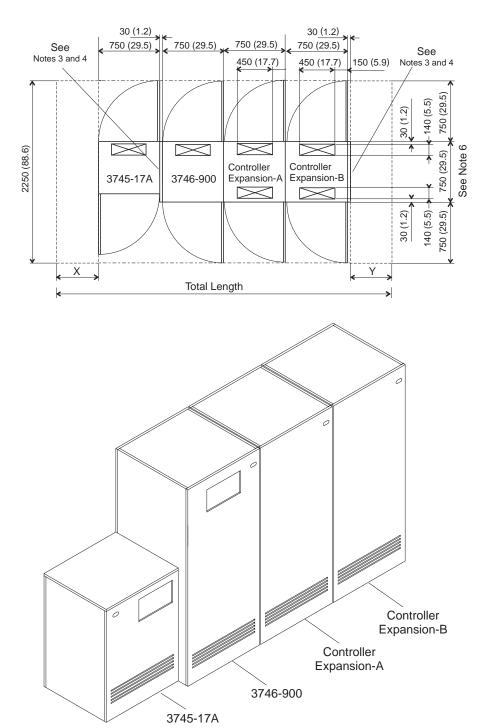




The 3746-900 and the Controller Expansion (FC 5023) can be installed on the right or the left side of the 3745. The Controller Expansion can be installed separately from the 3745-17A (refer to page 11). The X and Y dimensions depend on your configuration (refer to Table 3 on page 13). Total length is explained on page 1.

3745 Model 17A with a 3746 Model 900 and Both Controller Expansions A and B.

For the notes in the following diagram, refer to page 7.

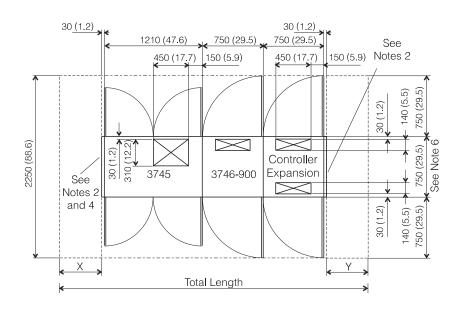


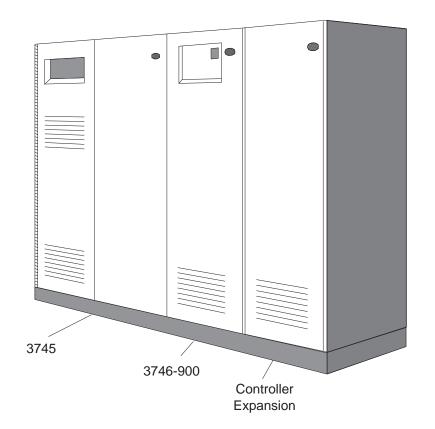
The 3746-900 and the Controller Expansion (FC 5023) can be installed on the right or the left side of the 3745. The Controller Expansion can be installed separately from the 3745-17A (refer to page 11). Both Controller Expansions A and B are optional.

The X and Y dimensions depend on your configuration (refer to Table 3 on page 13). Total length is explained on page 1.

3745 Models 21A, 31A, 41A, or 61A with a 3746-900 and One Controller Expansion

For the notes in the following diagram, refer to page 7.



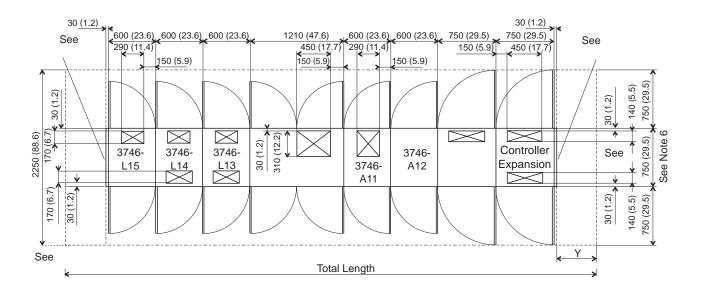


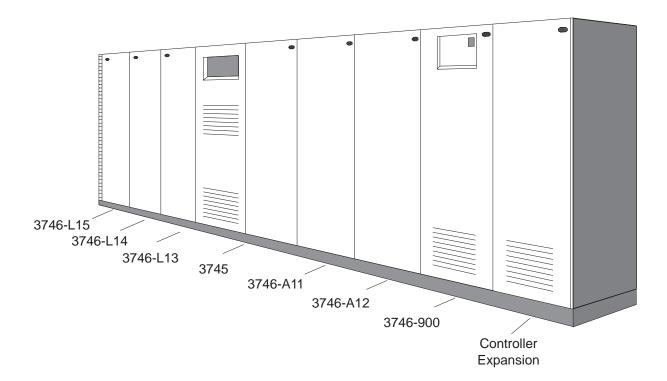
The Controller Expansion (FC 5023) can be installed on the right or the left side of the 3745 or can be installed separately from the 3745 (refer to page 11).

The X and Y dimensions depend on the configuration (refer to Table 3 on page 13). Total length is explained on page 1.

3745 Models 21A, 31A, 41A, or 61A Maximum Configuration with a 3746-900 and One Controller Expansion

For the notes in the following diagram, refer to page 7.



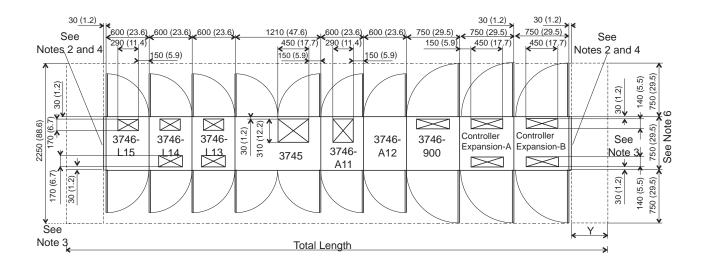


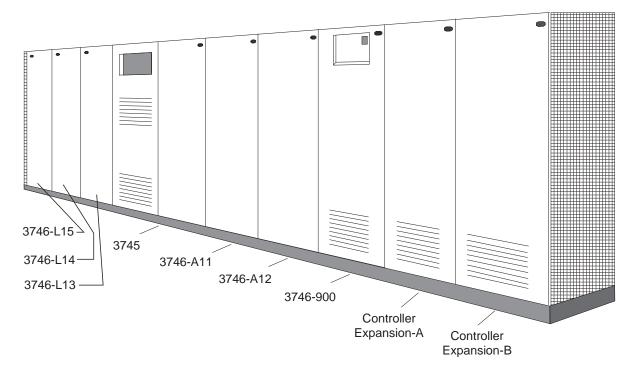
The Controller Expansion (FC 5023) can be installed on the right or the left side of the 3745 or can be installed separately from the 3745 (refer to page 11).

The X and Y dimensions depend on the configuration (refer to Table 3 on page 13). Total length is explained on page 1.

3745 Models 21A, 31A, 41A, or 61A Maximum Configuration with a 3746-900 and Both Controller Expansions A and B

For the notes in the following diagram, refer to page 7.





The Controller Expansion (FC 5023) can be installed on the right or the left side of the 3745 or can be installed separately from the 3745 (refer to page 11). Both Controller Expansions A and B are optional. The X and Y dimensions depend on the configuration (refer to Table 3 on page 13). Total length is explained on page 1.

Notes:

- 1. 3745 Models 21A and 41A and 3746 Models A11, A12, L13, L14 and L15 are no longer available from IBM.
- 2. Cable entry and exit area locating dimensions are measured from edge of frame, not covers. The casters must not be less than 75 mm (3 in.) from a hole under a frame.
 - The 3745-x1A, the 3746-9x0, and Controller Expansion have four swiveling castors.
 - The 3745-17A and the 3746-A11 to L15 have:
 - Two swiveling castors on the front side
 - Two fixed castors on the rear side

Leveling pads are delivered with each unit.

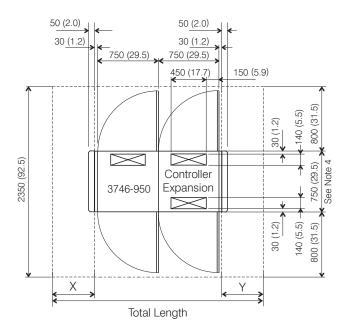
- 3. Side ground plates are delivered with the 3745 Models 21A to 61A. When a 3746-900 or Controller Expansion is installed, these plates are relocated to the end of the configuration by the IBM service representative. Cutaways in the ground plates correspond to the cable entry and exit areas shown in the plan views.
- 4. Side covers are delivered with the 3746-900 configured for the 3745-17A. When the Controller Expansion feature is installed, one of these covers is relocated to the end of the Controller Expansion by the IBM service representative.
- 5. The 3745 Models 21A to 61A are shipped with side covers. When a 3746-900 or the Controller Expansion is installed, the 3745 side covers are relocated to the end of the 3746-900 or Controller Expansion by the IBM service representative.
- 6. A raised floor is recommended.
 - For 3745 Models 21A to 61A, a raised floor is required if one of the following conditions is present:
 - A 3746-900 is connected to the base frame (3745).
 - The base frame (3745) is channel-attached.
 - More than 32 attachments (low-speed lines, high-speed lines, Ethernet lines, and token-ring lines) are connected to the base frame (3745).
 - For 3745 Model 17A, a raised floor is required if one of the following conditions is present:
 - More than 64 external cables (LIC cables, high-speed line cables, Ethernet cables, token-ring cables).
 - More than two LIC base features.
 - Two parallel channel attachments with blue cables (part number 5460185), or one parallel channel attachment with a gray cable (part number 5353920).

When no raised floor is installed, the cables should be protected with ramps or trenches.

7. Dimension includes front and rear covers that are 30 mm (1.2 in.) each.

3746-950 with a Controller Expansion (FC 5023)

For the notes in the following diagram, refer to page 12.



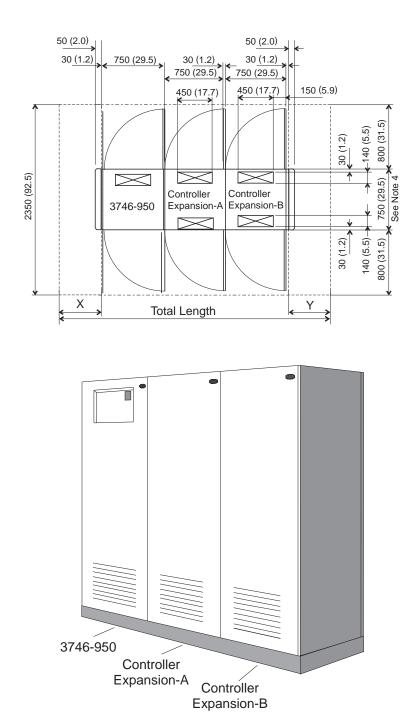


The Controller Expansion can be installed on either the right or the left side of the 3746-950.

Total length is explained on page 1.

3746-950 with Two Controller Expansions (A and B)

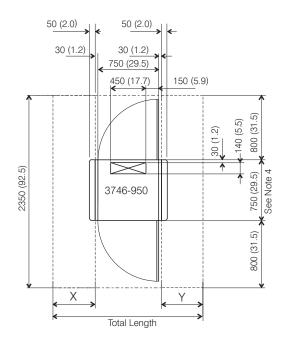
For the notes in the following diagram, refer to page 12.

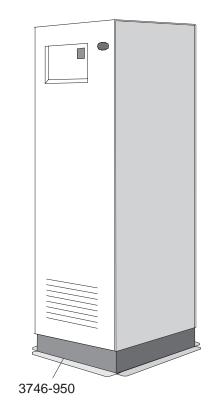


This is an example configuration. Controller Expansion-A and -B can be installed together, but separate from the 3746-950 box. Refer also to notes 5 and 6 on page 12.

3746-950 Standing Alone

For the notes in the following diagram, refer to page 12.

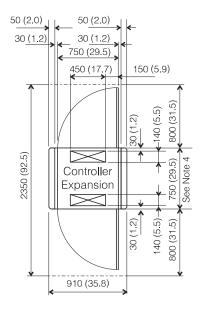


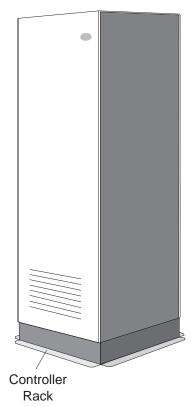


Total length is explained on page 1.

Controller Expansion (FC 5023) Standing Alone

For the notes in the following diagram, refer to page 12.





Refer to notes 5 and 6 on page 12.

- 1. Cable entry and exit area locating dimensions are measured from edge of frame, not covers.
- 2. The 3746-950 and Controller Expansion have four swiveling castors. The castors must not be less than 75 mm (3 in.) from a hole under a frame.
- A raised floor is recommended.
 - When no raised floor is installed, the cables should be protected with ramps or trenches.
- 4. Dimension includes front and rear covers that are 30 mm (1.2 in.) each.
- 5. For the Controller Expansion standing alone or standing next to a 3745-17A (with no 3746-900), the side cover (FC 5024) must be ordered. It includes the side cover ground plates. The side covers and ground plates are installed by the IBM service representative for radio frequency interference (RFI) and electric static discharge (ESD) protection of the machine.
- 6. The Controller Expansion can be located about 6 m (20-ft) from the 3746-900 or 3746-950 when using the standard cable shipped with the 3746. For installation more 6 m (20 ft) from the 3746 frame, refer to the information about longer cables on page 71.
 - If the Multiaccess Enclosure (MAE FC 3001) is part of the 3746 configuration, the Controller Expansion, which houses the MAE, cannot be more than 6 m (20 ft) from the 3746 frame.

Service Clearances and Floor Loading

Table 3 is based on IBM's method of calculating floor loading. The side clearance is not a service requirement; it ensures that the weight distribution of the 3745 and 3746 units meets IBM standards.

The side service clearances depend on the strength of raised floor. The customer facilities management personnel should be consulted to determine the floor load rating that is installed. The table below shows the required side service clearances for different types of raised floor.

Table 3 (Page 1 of 2). Floor Loading an S	Table 3 (Page 1 of 2). Floor Loading an Service Clearances						
Configuration (See note 1)		oading	Total End Clearance (X+Y)				
	kg/m²	lb/ft²	mm	in.			
3745-17A	300	61	0	0			
3745-17A + Controller Expansion	320	65	0	0			
3745-17A + 3746-900	345	70	650	25.6			
	365 390	74 79	400 0	15.7 0			
2745 47A + 2746 000 + Controller Francisco			-	_			
3745-17A + 3746-900 + Controller Expansion See page 2.	345 372	70 75	550 0	21.6 0			
Controller Expansion (FC 5023) See diagram on page 10.	345	70	0	0			
3745-x1A.	345 365	70 74	1150 850	45.3 33.5			
3745-x1A + Controller Expansion	345 365	70 74	1000 700	39.4 27.6			
3745-x1A + 3746-900 (1 ac input)	345 365	70 74	1900 1400	74.8 55.1			
27/5 /4 27/2 222	390	79	950	37.4			
3745-x1A + 3746-900 (2 ac inputs or 1 ac + 1 dc input)	345 365	70 74	1900 1750	74.8 55.1			
(2 30 3 4 30 5 7 30 3 7 4 30 3 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4 4	390	79	1250	49.2			
3745-x1A + 3746-900 + Controller Expansion	345	70	1900	74.8			
(1 ac input) See note 1 and page 4.	365 390	74 79	1400 950	55.1 37.4			
2745 v4 A + 2746 000 + Controller Evnencies	345	79	1900	74.8			
3745-x1A + 3746-900 + Controller Expansion (2 ac inputs or 1 ac + 1 dc input)	345	70	1750	55.1			
See page 4.	390	79	1250	49.2			
3745-x1A + 3746-A11	345	70	1800	70.9			
	365 390	74 79	1300 850	51.2 33.5			
3745-x1A + 3746-A11 + 3746-900	345	70	2500	98.4			
0. 10 X.X. 1 0140 X11 1 0140 000	365	74	1700	66.9			
	390	79	1500	59.1			
3745-x1A + 3746-A11 + 3746-900	345	70	2500	98.4			
+ Controller Expansion See note 2.	365 390	74 79	1700 1500	66.9 59.1			

- 1. x1A = 21A, 31A, 41A, or 61A.
- 2. On this configuration, X and Y must be split into two areas: X or Y must be 750 mm minimum and the remaining length on the other side.
- 3. The maximum configuration includes the 3746-A11 and L-13 plus any combination of 3746-A12, -L14, and L-15 frames.

Table 3 (Page 2 of 2). Floor Loading an Service Clearances					
Configuration (See note 1)		oading ing	Total End Clearance (X+Y)		
	kg/m²	lb/ft²	mm	in.	
3745-x1A + 3746-A11 + 3746-L13	345 365 390	70 74 79	1700 1300 750	66.9 51.2 29.5	
3745-x1A + 3746-A11 + 3746-L13 + 3746-900 See note 2.	345 365 390	70 74 79	2750 2000 1500	108.3 78.7 59.1	
3745-x1A + 3746-A11 + 3746-L13 + 3746-900 + Controller Expansion See note 2.	345 365 390	70 74 79	2450 1500 1500	96.5 59.1 59.1	
3745-x1A Maximum Configuration + 3746-900 See notes 2 and 3.	345 365 390	70 74 79	3000 1600 1500	118.1 63.0 59.1	
3745-x1A Maximum Configuration + 3746-900 + Controller Expansion See notes 2 and 3 on page 5.	345 365 390	70 74 79	3000 1600 1500	118.1 63.0 59.1	
3746-950 See page 10.	345 365 390	70 74 79	890 690 440	35.0 27.1 17.3	
3746-950 + Controller Expansion See page 8.	345 365 390	70 74 79	890 520 190	35.0 20.5 7.5	
3746-950 + 2 Controller Expansion See page 9.	345 365 390	70 74 79	890 520 190	35.0 20.5 7.5	

Notes:

- 1. x1A = 21A, 31A, 41A, or 61A.
- 2. On this configuration, X and Y must be split into two areas: X or Y must be 750 mm minimum and the remaining length on the other side.
- 3. The maximum configuration includes the 3746-A11 and L-13 plus any combination of 3746-A12, -L14, and L-15 frames.

Ground Leakage Current

The ground leakage current for a 3745-21A, 31A, 41A, or 61A must not exceed 500 mA rms in any configuration.

The ground leakage current for the 3745-17A must not exceed 3.5 mA rms.

The ground leakage current for the 3746-9x0 and Controller Expansion (FC 5023) (or user-supplied rack) must not exceed 3.5 mA rms per power cord.

Physical Specifications

For service processor specifications, refer to page 35.

Dimensions

Frame	Width (See note)	Depth	Height
3745-17A	750 mm	650 mm	1 000 mm
	(29.5 in.)	(25.75 in.)	(39.5 in.)
3745-21A, 31A, 41A,	1 210 mm	750 mm	1 775 mm
61A	(47.75 in.)	(29.5 in.)	(70 in.)
3746-900, 950	750 mm	750 mm	1 775 mm
	(29.5 in.)	(29.5 in.)	(70 in.)
3746-A11, A12, L13,	600 mm	750 mm	1 775 mm
L14, L15	(24 in.)	(29.5 in.)	(70 in.)
Controller Expansion (FC 5023)	750 mm	750 mm	1 775 mm
	(29.5 in.)	(29.5 in.)	(70 in.)
Multiaccess Enclosure	480 mm	358 mm	572 mm
(FC 3000 and FC 3001)	(18.9 in.)	(14.1 in.)	(22.5 in.)
Note: These dimensions	exclude side covers.		

Weight

Frame	Weighs less than:
3745-17A	230 kg (510 lb)
3745-21A, 31A, 41A, 61A	680 kg (1 496 lb)
3746-900 (1 ac)	390 kg (858 lb)
3746-900 (2 ac)	446 kg (982 lb)
3746-950 (1 ac)	410 kg (904 lb)
3746-950 (2 ac)	466 kg (1027 lb)
3746-A11	320 kg (704 lb)
3746-A12, L13, L14, L15	240 kg (528 lb)
Controller Expansion (FC 5023) (Populated)	288 kg (633 lb)

Heat Output

Frame	Maximum Heat Output		
	kW	(kBTU/hr)	
3745-17A	0.8	(2.6)	
3745-21A, 41A	2.6	(8.9)	
3745-31A, 61A	2	(6.9)	
3746-900, 950	2.2	(7.7)	
3746-A11	1.2	(4.1)	
3746-A12	0.5	(1.7)	
3746-L13	0.6	(2.1)	
3746-L14	0.6	(2.1)	
3746-L15	0.6	(2.1)	
Controller Expansion (FC 5023) (Populated)	1.4	(4.9)	

Airflow

A forced air ventilation system is installed inside each 3745/3746 frame.

Frame	Airflow
3745-17A	7.5 m³/min (260 cfm)
3745-21A, 31A, 41A, 61A	18 m³/min (635 cfm)
3746-900, 950	18 m³/min (635 cfm)
3746-A11	24 m³/min (850 cfm)
3746-A12, L13, L14, L15	12 m³/min (425 cfm)
3746-L13	5 m³/min (180 cfm)
3746-L14	5 m³/min (180 cfm)
3746-L15	5 m³/min (180 cfm)
Controller Expansion (FC 5023) with Multiaccess Enclosure (FC 3000 or FC 3001)	2 m³/min (71 cfm)

Acoustical Data

For definitions, see *Acoustics* in Chapter 3 of *IBM General Information Manual: Installation Manual-Physical Planning*, GC22-7072, and *IBM Acoustical Product Specifications*, CS1-1710.

		LwAd			
Model		Operating (bels)	Idling (bels)	I	Т
3745-17A Operating at 208 \	/ 60 Hz	7.0	7.0	NI-	No
or at 220 V 50 Hz		7.0	7.0	No	No
3745-21A, 31A,	3745 alone	7.5	7.5	No	No
41A, 61A Operating at 208 V 60 Hz	3745 and 3746-L13 and 3746-A11	7.8	7.8	No	No
3745-21A, 31A,	3745 alone	7.5	7.5	No	No
41A, 61A Operating at 380 V 50 Hz	3745 and 3746-L13 and 3746-A11	7.8	7.8	No	No
3746-9x0 Operating at 208 \ or at 220 V 50 Hz	/ 60 Hz	7.5	7.5	No	No

Environmental Specifications

Table 4. 3745 and 3746-9x0 Environmental Specifications					
Operating Environment Non-operating Environment					
Temperature	10°C-38°C (50°F-100°F)	10°C-43°C (50°F-110°F			
Relative Humidity	8%-80%	8%-80%			
Max Wet Bulb	23°C (73°F)	27°C (80°F)			

Lightning Protection

The power input of the 3745, 3746-900, 3746-950, and Multiaccess Enclosure (FC 3000 and FC 3001) are protected against lightning.

Contact an electrical contractor to determine if lightning protection is needed for your power distribution system.

The line interface coupler (LIC), token-ring, high-speed line, and service processor cables are not protected against lightning and must be placed in the same building as the 3745/3746 units.

Electromagnetic Interference (3745, 3746-9x0, and Controller **Expansion**)

- 1. The 3745/3746-9x0 and Controller Expansion (physically attached to the 3746-9x0 or not) is always compatible with the following electromagnetic interference standards:
 - CISPR Publication 22 (1993), Class A (International)
 - FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.)
 - VCCI Class A (Japan)
 - EN 55022 (1994), Class A (Europe).
- 2. If a 3745-950 (with or without a physically attached controller expansion) or a controller expansion (installed separately from any 3745/3746-9x0) is installed on a raised metallic floor with the cabling underneath this floor, then the following standards apply to the 3746-950 or the Controller Expansion:
 - CISPR Publication 22 Class B (International)
 - EN 55022 Class B (Europe)
 - · VCCI Class B (Japan).
- 3. The Line Connection Boxes (LCB), whenever configured, must be installed inside the 3746-9x0 or the Controller Expansion frame to comply with Class B.
- 4. A Controller Expansion (physically attached to the 3746-950 or not) equipped with a Multiaccess Enclosure (FC 3000 or FC 3001) is always compatible with the following electromagnetic interference standards:
 - CISPR Publication 22 Class A
 - FCC, Part 15, Subpart J, Class A (U.S.A.)
 - General Operating Permit (GOP)(Germany)
 - VCCI Class A and IEC 1000-3-2 (Japan).

Power Requirements

3745 Models 21A, 31A, 41A, and 61A, and 3746 Models A11, A12, L13, L14, and L15

The 3745 power system has an external power cord. It distributes power to the attached 3746 Models A11, A12, L13, L14, and L15.

Note: The 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Model 900 and 950 have their own power supply and external power cords. The Controller Expansion (FC 5023) has its own external power cords.

Countries	Freq.	Voltages (Nominal)	Phase Distribution System	Wiring (Note 1)	Power Factor	Maximum Machine Load (Amperes) (Notes 1 and 2)	Inrush Current (Amperes at first cycle)
U.S.A. and Canada	60 Hz	208/240	Three phases phase—to—phase	Four-wire	0.65	31.6	230
Europe, Middle East and	60 Hz	208/220	Three phases	Four-wire	0.65	31.6	230
Africa	50 Hz	200/415	phase-to-phase (delta)	Four-wire		33	230
Latin America	60 Hz	380/415	Three phases	Five-wire	0.65	17.3	150
Asia Pacific (except Japan)	50 Hz	380/415	phase—to— neutral (wye)	Five-wire			
Japan	60 Hz	200/240	Three phases	Four-wire	0.65	33	230
	50 Hz	200/240	phase—to—phase	Four-wire			

- Four-wire configurations include three phase wires and one ground.
 Five-wire configurations include three phase wires, one ground, and one neutral that are mandatory in the wye system.
- 2. Maximum load per phase under minimum nominal voltage.
- 3. A phase load imbalance of 1.2 is included.

3745 Model 17A

The 3746 Model 900 has its own power supply and external power cords. The Controller Expansion (FC 5023) has its own external power cords.

Countries	Freq	Voltages (Nominal) (Note 1)	Phases	Wiring (Note 2)	Power Factor	Maximum Current (Amperes)	Inrush Current (Amperes at first cycle)
U.S.A. and Canada	60 Hz	200-208/220/240	0ne	Three-wire	0.6	5.5	100
Europe, Middle East, and Africa	50 Hz	200/220-230/240	0	T	0.6	F F	100
Latin America	60 Hz	200/220–230/240	One	Three-wire	0.6	5.5	100
Asia Pacific							

- 1. In some countries, 120 V power is available by ordering RPQ 7L1184.
- 2. Includes two phase wires and one ground wire.

3746 Models 900 and 950

The 3746 has a basic ac power supply and power cord and, optionally, a second ac power supply and power cord.

Note: The dc power supply is no longer available from IBM.

ac Power at Each Inlet

Countries	Freq	Voltages (Nominal) (See Note 1)	Phases	Wiring (See Note 2)	Power Factor	Maximum Current (Amperes)
U.S.A./Canada	60 Hz	200-208/220/240	0ne	Three-wire	0.75	8
Europe, Middle East, Africa	50 Hz	200/220-230/240	0ne	Three-wire	0.75	8
Latin America	60 Hz	200/220-230/240	one	inree-wire		
Asia Pacific	50 Hz	200/220-230/240	•	Three-wire	0.75	8
	60 Hz	200/220-230/240	0ne	inree—wire	0.75	0

Notes:

- The ac power supplies have three voltage possibilities. For example, 200-208/220/240 means that the first position has a range from 200 to 208 V ac. The second position is for 220 V ac and the third is 240 V ac.
- 2. Includes two phase wires and one ground wire.

Maximum Inrush Current

Maximum Inrush Current (A) Verses Duration (ms)						
Α	160	192	192 256 288 400			
ms	20	12	10	9	8	

dc Power

Note: The dc power supply is no longer available from IBM.

Input voltage	-44.5 V to -60.0 V
Maximum Continuous Current	26 A
Maximum Inrush Current	400 A during 5 ms
Wiring	2 wires plus one ground wire. Positive and ground lines connected to DC common and machine frame.

Controller Expansion (FC 5023)

The Controller Expansion has one or two ac power inlets, each powering an ac outlet distribution box. Each box provides eight 220 V ac sockets for components described in 47.

Countries	Freq	Voltages (Nominal)	Phases	Wiring See Note 1	Maximum Current (Amperes) See Note 2
U.S.A. and Canada	60 Hz	200–240	0ne	Three-wire	12
Europe, Middle East, and Africa	50 Hz	200–240	One	Three—wire	12
Latin America Asia Pacific	60 Hz	200–240	one	imree-wire	12

Notes:

- 1. Includes two phase wires and one ground wire.
- 2. Sockets labeled J1, J2, J3, and J4 can handle a total of 6 A (fuse F1). Sockets labeled J5, J6, J7, and J8 can handle a total of 6 A (fuse F2).
- 3. You can have up to two Controller Expansions.

Multiaccess Enclosure

The Multiaccess Enclosure has a basic ac power supply and an optional power supply.

The ac power is supplied from an ac socket of the Controller Expansion that houses the Multiaccess Enclosure and uses:

- Nominal voltage of 200 to 240 V ac, single phase.
- Frequency of 50 or 60 Hz. The power supply is a universal auto-sensing type.
- Wiring: three-wire, rated for 0.65 kVA of power.
- Maximum current is 3 A. (70 amps peak inrush current for one quarter cycle per power supply.)

Power Input

The 50- or 60-Hz power input requirements are:

Frame	Maximum kVA
3745-17A	1.1
3745-210, 310, 410, 610, 21A, 31A, 41A, and 61A	4.0
3746-900	1.8
3746-950	1.8
3746-A11	1.8
3746-A12	0.8
3746-L13, -L14, and -L15	0.9
Controller Expansion (FC 5023)	2.9

The minimum branch circuit rating should be calculated by an electrical contractor according to country regulations. For example, in the U.S.A. and in Canada, the minimum branch circuit rating is for:

- 3745 Models 21A, 31A, 41A, or 61A base frame: 15 A per phase
- 3745 Models 21A, 31A, 41A, or 61A maximum configuration: 40 A per phase
- 3745 Model 17A maximum configuration: 10 A
- 3746-900: 15 A • 3746-950: 15 A
- Controller Expansion (FC 5023): 15 A.

Power Cord Characteristics

3745 Model 17A

Voltages	Cable Outside Diameter mm (in.)	Number of Conductors	AWG Number AWG (mm²)
200-240 single phase (AC)	U.S.A./JAPAN 9.5 (0.4) Other 8.5 (0.37)	2 plus ground	14 (2)

3745 Models 21A, 31A, 41A, and 61A

Voltages	Cable Outside Diameter mm (in.)	Number of Conductors	AWG Number AWG (mm²)
200-240 delta configuration	25.9 (1.2)	3 plus ground	8 (8.4)
380-440 wye configuration	21.7 (0.85)	4 plus ground	10 (5.3)

The power wiring configuration can be changed on-site from wye to delta and from delta to wye. Contact your IBM representative.

3746 Models 900 and 950

Voltages	Cable Outside Diameter mm (in.)	Number of Conductors	AWG Number AWG (mm²)
200-240 single phase (AC)	U.S.A./JAPAN 9.5 (0.4) Other 8.5 (0.37)	2 plus ground	14 (2)
-41.3 to -60.0 (DC)	All Countries 22.5 (0.88)	2 plus ground	8 (8)

Controller Expansion

If you have two Controller Expansions, these requirements refer to both.

Voltages	Cable Outside Diameter mm (in.)	Number of Conductors	AWG Number AWG (mm²)
200-240 single phase (AC)	U.S.A./JAPAN 9.5 (0.4) Other 8.5 (0.37)	2 plus ground	14 (2)

Power Cord Length

A 4.3 m (14-ft) power cord is shipped with the 3745. One or two 4.3 m (14-ft) power cords are shipped with each 3746-9x0 and Controller Expansion, depending on how many power inlets are ordered. In Chicago, Illinois, U.S.A., a 1.8 m (6-ft) power cord is shipped instead, provided that the controller configuration includes the specific code 9986.

Power Cord Plug and Receptacle

The ac power cord is supplied with a country-dependent plug. The dc power cord for the 3746-9x0 is supplied with a terminal to fit an M6 or 0.250 - 20 UNC plug. The customer must provide a receptacle, as shown in the following tables. The branch circuit rating should match the receptacle rating.

The approved plug for the specific location and installation should be installed by an electrical contractor. The green/yellow grounding wire of the power cable must be attached to the ground leg of the power plug.

U.S.A., Canada, and Mexico

Frame	Plug Type	Plug	Ordering Code	Receptacle Type
3745-17A	Moisture Resistant	Russelstoll 3720-DPU2	9020	Russelstoll 3913U-2 (inline) or 3743U-2 (box type)
	Locking	NEMA L6-15P	9890	NEMA L6-15R
	Nonlocking	NEMA 6-15P	9830*	NEMA 6-15R
3745-21A, -31A, -41A, -61A	Moisture Resistant	Russelstoll 7328-78	None	Russelstoll 7428 (inline) or 7324 (box type)
3746-900/950 (ac input)	Moisture Resistant	Russelstoll 3720-DPU2	9027	Russelstoll 3913U-2 (inline) or 3743U-2 (box type)
	Locking	NEMA L6-15P	9894	NEMA L6-15R
	Nonlocking	NEMA 6-15P	9895	NEMA 6-15R
Controller Expansion (FC 5023)	Moisture Resistant	Russelstoll 3720-DPU2	9028	Russelstoll 3913U-2 (inline) or 3743U-2 (box type)
	Locking	NEMA L6-15P	9898*	NEMA L6-15R
	Nonlocking	NEMA 6-15P	9038	NEMA 6-15R

Japan

Frame	Plug Type	Plug	Ordering Code	Receptacle Type
3745-17A	Locking	NEMA L6-15P	9890	NEMA L6-15R
	Nonlocking	NEMA 6-15P	9830*	NEMA 6-15R
745-21A, -31A, -41A, -61A	Moisture Resistant	Hirose Electric CL105-0091	None	Hirose Electric CL105-0092
3746-900/950 (ac input)	Locking	NEMA L6-15P	9892 (50 Hz) 9894 (60 Hz)	NEMA L6-15R
	Nonlocking	NEMA 6-15P	9893 (50 Hz)* 9895 (60 Hz)	NEMA 6-15R
Controller	Locking	NEMA L6-15P	9898*	NEMA L6-15R
Expansion (FC 5023)	Nonlocking	NEMA 6-15P	9838	NEMA 6-15R

Other Countries

Table 7. Receptacle Types Needed in Other Countries	
Frames	Plug Type
3745-21A, -31A,-41A, -61A	No plug shipped
3745-17A 3746-900/950 (ac input) Controller Expansion (FC 5023)	Country standard plug. Refer to pages 26 and 29.

Country Frequency and Power Plug Identification

In Table 8, the second column (3745 Plug) and third column (3746-900/950 and Controller Expansion Plug) refer to the power plugs shown on page 29.

Table 8 (Page 1 of 3). Country Frequency and Power Plug Identification				
Country	Freq	Plug Type		
	(Hz)	3745- 17A	3746-900/950 and Controller Expansion	
Afghanistan	50	18	18	
Albania	50	18	18	
Algeria	50	18	18	
Andorra	50	18	18	
Angola	50	18	18	
Argentina	50	6	54	
Australia	50	6	54	
Austria	50	18	18	
Bahamas	60	5	5	
Bahrain	50	23	46	
Bangladesh	50	22	22	
Barbados	50	6	54	
Belgium	50	18	18	
Benin	50	18	18	
Bermuda	60	5	5	
Bolivia	50	6	54	
Bosnia	50	18	18	
Brazil	60	5	5	
Brunei	50	23	46	
Bulgaria	50	18	18	
Burma	50	22	22	
Cameroon	50	18	18	
Canada	60	5/10/34	5/10/34	

Table 8 (Page 1 of 3). Country Frequency and Power Plug Identification			
Country	Freq	Pli	ug Type
	(Hz)	3745- 17A	3746-900/950 and Controller Expansion
Central African Republic	50	18	18
Chad	50	18	18
Channel Islands	50	23	46
Chile	50	25	25
China	50	6	54
Colombia	60	5	5
Congo Brazzaville	50	18	18
Costa Rica	60	5	5
Croatia	50	18	18
Cyprus	50	23	46
Czech Republic and Slovakia	50	18	18
Denmark	50	19	19
Dominican Republic	60	5	5
Egypt	50	18	18
El Salvador	60	5	5
Ecuador	60	5	5
Ethiopia	50	25	25
Finland	50	18	18
France	50	18	18

Table 8 (Page 2 of 3). Country Frequency and Power Plug Identification Country Freq **Plug Type** (Hz) 3745-3746-900/950 17A and Controller **Expansion** Germany Ghana Greece Guatemala Guinea Haiti Honduras Hong Kong Hungary Iceland India Indonesia Iran Iraq Ireland Israel Italy **Ivory Coast** Jamaica 50/60 5/10 5/10 Japan Jordan Kenya Korea Kuwait Lebanon Libya Liechtenstein Luxembourg Macedonia Malagasy Malawi Malaysia Mali Malta

Country	Freq (Hz)	Plug Type	
•		3745- 17A	3746-900/950 and Controller Expansion
Martinique	50	18	18
Mauritania	50	18	18
Mauritius	50	18	18
Mexico	60	5/10/34	5/10/34
Monaco	50	18	18
Morocco	50	18	18
Mozambique	50	18	18
Nepal	50	23	46
Netherlands	50	18	18
Netherlands Antil.	60	5	5
New Caledonia	50	18	18
New Zealand	50	6	49
Nicaragua	60	5	5
Niger	50	18	18
Nigeria	50	23	46
Norway	50	18	18
Oman	50	23	46
Pakistan	50	22	22
Panama	60	5	5
Papua New Guinea	50	6	54
Paraguay	50	2	54
Peru	60	5	5
Philippines	60	5	5
Poland	50	18	18
Portugal	50	18	18
Qatar	50	23	46
Romania	50	18	18
Saudi Arabia	50/60	18	18
Senegal	50	18	18
Serbia	50	18	18

Table 8 (Page 3 of 3). Country Frequency and Power Plug Identification				
Country		Plug Type		
(Hz)	3745- 17A	3746-900/950 and Controller Expansion		
Sierra Leone	50	23	46	
Singapore	50	23	46	
Slovenia	50	18	18	
Somalia	50	23	46	
South Africa	50	22	22	
Spain	50	18	18	
Sri Lanka	50	22	22	
Sudan	50	18	18	
Sweden	50	18	18	
Switzerland	50	24	46	
Syria	50	18	18	
Taiwan	60	5	5	
Tanzania	50	23	46	
Thailand	50	6	5	
Togo	50	18	18	
Trinidad Tobago	60	5	5	

Country	Freq (Hz)	Plug Type	
		3745- 17A	3746-900/950 and Controller Expansion
Tunisia	50	18	18
Turkey	50	18	18
Uganda	50	23	46
United Arab Emirates	50	23	46
United Kingdom	50	23	46
Upper Volta	50	18	18
Uruguay	50	2	54
U.S.A.	60	5/10/34	5/10/34
USSR	50	18	18
Venezuela	60	5	5
Western Samoa	50	6	5
Yemen	50	23	46
Congo	50	18	18
Zambia	50	23	46
Zimbabwe	50	18	18

Power Plug Types

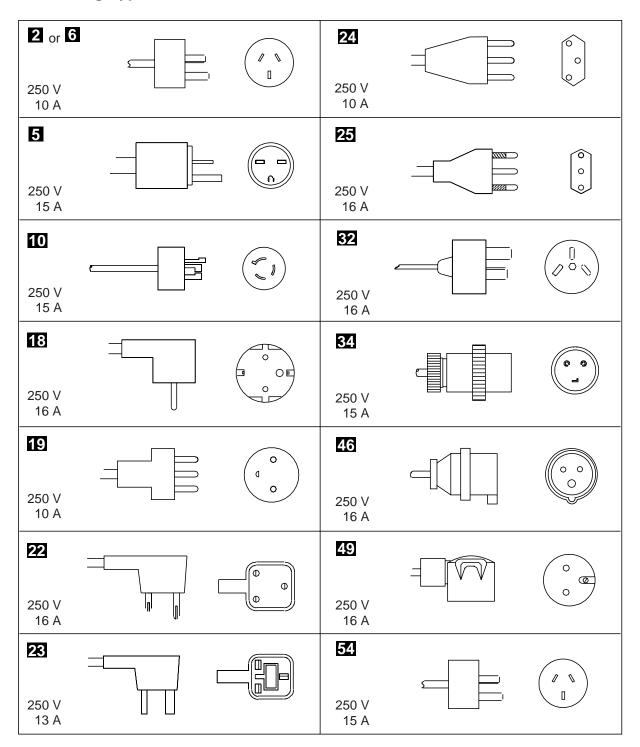


Figure 1. Side and Connector Ends for the Power Plugs

- 1. Plugs 2 and 6 are similar in appearance but have different pin length, thickness, and spacing.
- 2. The figure shows the side and connector end for each plug.
- 3. The form of the plug moldings depends on the manufacturer.

Controller Expansion and LCB Grounding (Earthing)

Voltage Grounding

Ground Source Characteristics

The voltage measured between a frame or stand-alone LCB and the earth (not the ground source connection) must be less than 1 volt as shown in Figure 2.

The Controller Expansion and LCBs outside a grounded frame must be grounded by connecting the ground point located on the Controller Expansion or LCB to a suitable ground source. The voltage difference between the Controller Expansion or LCB and the ground must be less than one (1) volt.

Controller Expansion

A 9 m (29.5-ft) ground wire comes with the Controller Expansion. It has an M5 terminal at both ends. An M5 screw with two washers is also supplied. See Figure 2.

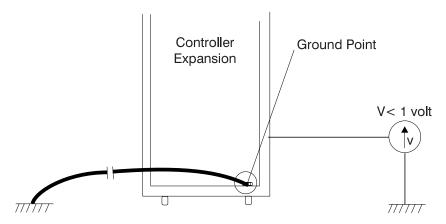


Figure 2. Controller Expansion Ground Requirements

If you have two Controller Expansions, they must both be grounded at the same ground point.

User-Supplied Rack

To meet the less-than-one-volt requirement, use at least 2.5mm² green/yellow wire and an M5 screw (or bolt and nut) and washers that are shown in Figure 3. See also Figure 2.

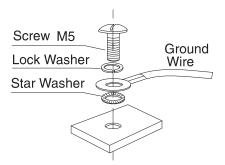


Figure 3. User-Supplied Rack Ground Requirements

Stand-Alone LCB

A single LCB may be used alone on a table or suitable shelf. To meet the less-than-one-volt requirement, use at least 2.5mm² green/yellow wire and an M5 screw and washers that are shown in Figure 4. See also Figure 2 on page 30.

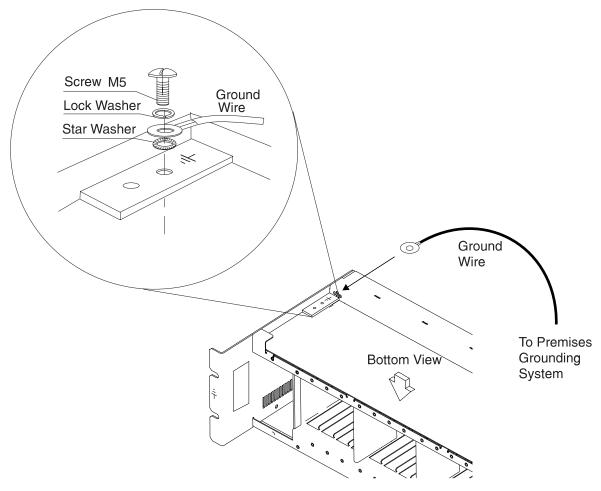


Figure 4. User-Supplied Rack Ground Requirements

Current Grounding

The ground leakage current for the 3746 Network Node and Controller Expansion (or user-supplied rack) must not exceed 3.5 mA rms per power cord.

3745 Customer Power Control Relay

The customer power control relay is located in the 3745 console tailgate and can be used to power on/off equipment external to the controller. It includes:

- · A normal-closed contact and a normal-open contact when the power is off, and the reverse when the power is on.
- · An outlet available to the customer.

The voltage and current rating is 30 V ac or 42.4 V dc at 20-500 mA.

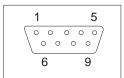
The plug is not provided by IBM. It is a standard nine-pin female D shell connector including:

- One receptacle (AMP reference 205203-1 or equivalent)
- Four sockets (AMP reference 66504-9 or equivalent)
- One housing (AMP reference 205729-1 or equivalent)
- Two studs (AMP reference 350547-3 or equivalent).

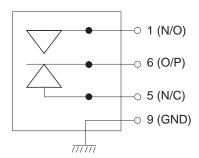
The cable is not provided by IBM. Its characteristics are:

- Bulk cable, with a maximum outside diameter of 6 mm (0.23 in.)
- Four conductors
- AWG no. 22 (0.3 mm²).

Front (Pin Side) View of **Customer Power Control** Relay Connector on Console Tailgate



Pin-Out of Relay



Line Interface Attachment Cables

There are two types of LIC:

- LIC type 11 (LIC11) which is connected to DCE/DTE through line connection boxes (LCB) and active remote connectors (ARC)
- LIC type 12 (LIC12) which is connected to high-speed lines.

In Figure 5, the number above the ARC slot gives the physical position of the ARC in the LCB and represents the address increment with reference to ARC position +0. Address +15 is not used.

LCB Expansion +16 +17 +18 +19 +20 +21 +22 +23 +24 +25 +26 +27 +28 +29 +30 To DCE/DTE **LCB Base** +2 +3 +4 +5 +6 +7 +8 +9 +10 +11 +12 +13 +14 To DCE/DTE (See Note 2) See Note 3 ARC/3745 Cable (See Note 1) 3745/3746-L1x LIC11 LIC12 Reuse of 3745 cable on 3746 See Note 4 -: To High Speed Lines To DCE/DTE

Figure 5. Diagram of LIC11 and LIC12 Cables

- ARC/3745 cables adapt to LIC cables that normally connect to 3745/3746-L1x LIC1s, LIC3s, or LICs 4A/4B installed in a 3745 or 3746 L13, L14, or L15. See the tables on pages 84 and 85. This allows re-use of installed cables when lines are moved from LIC1s, LIC3s, or LICs 4A/4B to LIC11s on the 3746-900/950.
- 2. See page 84.
- 3. See page 83.
- 4. See page 76.

Line Connection Box

There are two types of line connection box (LCB):

- The line connection box base (LCBB).
- The line connection box expansion (LCBE). The LCBE is connected to the LCBB.

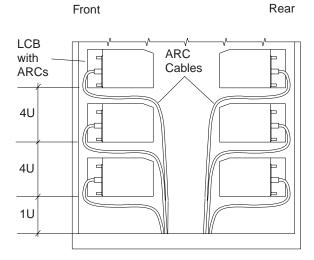
Each LCB contains up to 15 active remote connectors (ARCs). Refer to the figure on page 33.

The LCBs can be installed in any of the following location:

- In the 3746-900/950 (maximum of two LCBs when the Expansion Enclosure 2 is not present)
- In the Controller Expansion (FC 5023 of the 3745 and 3746-900/950.

The LCB occupies four units (Us) of height in the Controller Expansion. Refer to page 47.

The ARC cards are plugged in on the front of the LCB. The ARCS include the cable for modem attachment or direct attachment. Each side of the controller expansion or a double-sided rack can be equipped with an LCB. This allows the installation of two LCBs per four Us.



Note: 1U = 44.5 mm

Figure 6. Controller Expansion or 19-inch User-Supplied Rack (Side View)

• In a 19-inch user supplied rack.

Refer to installation information for the Controller Expansion (FC 5023) above, in addition to the information given below.

To reduce the possibility of radio frequency interference and electrostatic discharge, when installing a 19-inch rack, it is recommended to:

- Remove one flooring tile (when a raised floor is present) and install the rack where the flooring tile was removed.
- Have a conductive frame rack connected to the ground of the raised floor.
- Have metallic side covers on the rack.
- Install the LCBs starting from the bottom of the rack.

· On the floor.

This must be in an area where the LCBs and their cables will not be in walkways or work areas.

The maximum length of cable between the LIC11 and the LCBB is 105 m (345-ft). The cable connecting the LCBB to the LCBE is part of the LCBE and it is 35 cm (1.15 ft.) long.

Note: When installing the second expansion enclosure, LCBs installed in the 3746-9x0 must be moved into the Controller Expansion or user rack. You may need to order longer LIC11-to-LCB cables.

LCB Specifications

Dimensions

Width	45 cm (17.7 in.)
Depth	22 cm (8.7 in.)
Height	13 cm (5.1 in.)

Maximum Weight (with ARCs)

10 kg (22 lb)

Maximum Heat Output

17.6 W (60 BTU/hr)

Service Processor Specifications

The service processor is shipped with a stand-alone RSF modem and a Service Processor Access Unit. The service processor is composed of one rack-mountable system unit, a color display, a keyboard, and a mouse.

The service processor is equipped with an integrated CD-ROM drive, instead of an optical disk drive. Previously-installed service processors are to be upgraded to a service processor type 3 (FC 5050), which includes the CD-ROM drive required for the installation of the CD-ROM (containing the Licensed Internal Code) shipped with new machines and features.

For service purposes, it is recommended to install the Controller Expansion (FC 5023) that houses the service processor at a maximum distance of 10 m (33-ft) from the 3746 (maximum of 6 m (20-ft) if the Controller Expansion houses a Multiaccess Enclosure). Refer to page 71 for cable lengths.

If necessary, the display, keyboard, and mouse can be installed outside the Controller Expansion using the 4.6 m (15-ft) cable extenders provided with the service processor, leaving the system unit installed in the rack. If they are installed outside the rack, plan enough table space for display and keyboard use.

The service processor system unit, optical disk drive unit or CD-ROM drive of previously shipped service processors, color displays, and network node processors are powered via the ac outlet distribution box of the Controller Expansion.

Use 200-240 V Setting

The Controller Expansion ac outlet distribution box operates at 220 V ac. All components plugged into the ac outlet distribution box must be set for 220 V ac operation. If they have a manual switch setting, set it to 220 V ac.

- To protect 3746 operations against disruptions due to an electrical outage, the Controller Expansion, which houses and powers the NNP, MAE, and service processor should be powered from the same power source as the 3746 controller unit.
- 2. The 3746 Models 900 and 950 may use an already installed service processor type 3172, 9585 or 9597 (these are no longer available from IBM). However, new 3745s and 3746s and the Licensed Internal Code shipped with machine upgrades require the upgrade to a service processor type 3 (FC 5050). For more information, refer to the information presented in "Controller and Service Processor Integration" in the 3745/3746 Planning Series: Overview, Installation, and Integration.

System Unit Characteristics

Desktop and Rack-Mountable (Type 6275) Model (FC 5053, FC 5050)

Service Processor Type 3 (FC 5053) or Service Processor Upgrade to Type 3 (FC 5050)

Size:

- Width: 450 mm (17.7 in.)
- Depth: 450 mm (17.7 in.)
- Height: 128 mm (5.0 in.): 4U when rack mounted.

Weight: 11.3 kg (25 lb)

Heat Output (maximum): 700 BTUs per hour (204 watts)

Electrical Input:

- Input voltage: single phase, 90-265 V ac, 50 or 60 Hz
- Input current: 0.52 kVA maximum.
- Power cord; see "Power Distribution in Controller Expansion" on page 49 and "Service Processor Power Cords" on page 50.

Rack-Mountable (Type 7585) Model (FC 5052)

Service Processor Type 2 (FC 5052)

This service processor is no longer available from IBM.

Size:

- Width: 445 mm (17.5 in.).
- Depth: 444 mm (17.4 in.)
- Height: 171 mm (6.7 in.) 4U when rack mounted.

Weight: 15 kg (33.3 lb)

Heat Output (maximum):

1417 BTUs per hour (415 watts)

Electrical Input:

- Input voltage: single phase, 180-240 V ac, 50 or 60 Hz
- · Input current:
 - 6.0 A maximum at 100 to 125V
 - 3.0 A maximum at 200 to 245V
- Power cord; see "Power Distribution in Controller Expansion" on page 49 and "Service Processor Power Cords" on page 50.

Rack-Mountable (Type 3172) Model (FC 5021)

This service processor is no longer available from IBM.

Size:

- Depth: 444 mm (17.4 in.)
- Height: 254 mm (10.00 in.): 6U when rack mounted

• Width: 444 mm (17.4 in.).

Weight: 19 kg (47 lb)

Heat Output (maximum):

850 BTUs per hour (250 watts)

Electrical Input:

- Input voltage: single phase, 180-240 V ac, 50 or 60 Hz
- Input current: 2.5 A maximum
- Power cord; see "Power Distribution in Controller Expansion" on page 49 and "Service Processor Power Cords" on page 50.

Floor Standing (Type 9585) Tower Model (FC 5021)

This service processor is no longer available from IBM.

Size:

Depth: 501 mm (19.75 in.)
Height: 508 mm (20 in.)

• Width: 203 mm (8 in.).

Weight: 22.7 kg (50 lb)

Heat Output (maximum): 1046 BTUs per hour (307 watts)

Electrical Input:

Input voltage: single phasePower input: 0.6 kVA maximum.

Desktop (Type 9577) Model (FC 5020)

This service processor is no longer available from IBM.

Size:

Width: 440 mm (17.3 in.)Depth: 394 mm (15.5 in.)Height: 168 mm (6.6 in.).

Weight: 17.3 kg (38 lb)

Heat Output (maximum): 877 BTUs per hour (257 watts)

Electrical Input:

Input voltage: single phaseInput current: 2.2 A maximum.

CD-ROM Drive Unit (FC 5051)

This external drive unit is no longer available from IBM.

Size:

Height: 55 mm (2.16 in.)Depth: 315 mm (12.4 in.)

• Width: 160 mm (6.29 in.).

Electrical Input:

- Input voltage: single phase, 90 to 240 V ac, 50 or 60 Hz
- Input current: 1.8 A
- Power cord; see "Power Distribution in Controller Expansion" on page 49 and "Service Processor Power Cords" on page 50.

Optical Disk Drive Unit (FC 5026)

This external drive unit is no longer available from IBM.

Size:

- Height: 117 mm (4.6 in.) With base: 122 mm (4.8 in.)
- Depth: 228 mm (9.0 in.)
- Width: 46 mm (1.8 in.) With base: 77 mm (3.0 in.).

Electrical Input:

- Input voltage: single phase, 90 to 240 V ac, 50 or 60 Hz
- Input current: 0.7 A maximum.
- Power cord; see "Power Distribution in Controller Expansion" on page 49 and "Service Processor Power Cords" on page 50.

Color Display Characteristics

6546-0BN Model G54

Size:

- Width: 370 mm (14.6 in.)
- Depth: 397 mm (15.6 in.)
- Height: 398 mm (15.7 in.) including tile/swivel stand.

Weight: 13.6 kg (30 lb)

Electrical Input:

- Input Voltage: single phase, 100 to 240 V ac, 50 or 60 Hz
- Maximum current: 1.2 A at 120 V ac
- Power cord; see "Power Distribution in Controller Expansion" on page 49 and "Service Processor Power Cords" on page 50.

6546-01N Model G52

This color display is no longer available from IBM.

Size:

- Width: 368 mm (14.5 in.)
- Depth: 422 mm (16.6 in.)
- Height: 376 mm (14.8 in.) including tile/swivel stand.

Weight: 13.6 kg (30 lb)

Heat Output: 375 BTUs per hour (110 watts)

Electrical Input:

- Input Voltage: 90 to 264 V ac, 50 or 60 Hz
- Power cord; see "Power Distribution in Controller Expansion" on page 49 and "Service Processor Power Cords" on page 50.

Note: The 3764 Model 900 and 950 may use a service processor with an IBM 6553 Model 503, or with an IBM 8515 Color Display (these types of displays are no longer available from IBM).

RSF Modem

The RSF modem shipped with the service processor is an IBM 7858 modem unless it is not omologated for the country. If the IBM 7858 modem is not homologated, the IBM 7857 Modem is shipped. They are all desktop units, and installed by IBM, possibly in the Controller Expansion (FC 5023).

Note: In the U.S.A. and Canada, the 3745 and 3746-900/950 may use a service processor (type 9577) with an integrated modem (this type of service processor is no longer available from IBM).

IBM 7858 Modem Characteristics

Size:

Width: 210 mm (8.27 in.)
Depth: 150 mm (5.91 in.)
Height: 44 mm (1.73 in.).

Weight: 1.250 kg (2.75 lb)

Electrical Input:

- Input voltage: single phase, 100 to 240 V ac (country-dependent), 50 and 60 Hz (country-dependent)
- · Power input: 5 W
- Power cord (U.S.A., Canada): non-locking plug (110 V)
- Power cord (elsewhere): country-dependent plug (220 V).
- Power cord (all countries): refer to "Power Distribution in Controller Expansion" on page 49 and "Service Processor Power Cords" on page 50.

IBM 7857 Modem Characteristics

Size:

Width: 220 mm (8.7 in.)
Depth: 273 mm (10.7 in.)
Height: 85 mm (3.3 in.).

Weight: 2.6 kg (5.7 lb)

Electrical Input:

- Input voltage: single phase, 110 or 220 V ac (country-dependent), 50 or 60 Hz (country-dependent)
- Power input: 12.0 W
- Power cord (U.S.A., Canada): non-locking plug (110 V)
- Power cord (elsewhere): country-dependent plug (220 V).

Hayes Modem Characteristics

This modem is no longer available from IBM.

Size:

Width: 127 mm (5.0 in.)
Depth: 178 mm (7.0 in.)
Height: 32 mm (1.25 in.).

Weight: 0.37 kg (0.8 lb)

Electrical Input:

- Input Voltage: single phase, 99 to 253 V ac, 50 to 60 Hz
 - 110V +/-10% 60Hz (AC)
 - 230V +/-10% 50Hz (AC).
- Input Current: 0.8 A maximum.

IBM 7855 Model 10 Modem Characteristics

This modem is no longer available from IBM.

Size:

Width: 165 mm (6.5 in.)Depth: 280 mm (11 in.)Height: 64 mm (2.5 in.).

Weight: 2.5 kg (5.5 lb)

Electrical Input:

- Input Voltage: single phase, 90 to 259 V ac, 50 to 60 Hz
- Input Current: 0.16 A maximum
- Power cord (Japan): non-locking plug (100 V)
- Power cord (elsewhere): country-dependent plug (220 V).

Service Processor Access Unit (SPAU)

The SPAU is equivalent to the IBM 8228 Token-Ring Multi-Station Access Unit (MAU). It is installed in the Controller Expansion by IBM; refer to "Controller Expansion: Internal Power Distribution" on page 47.

Network Node Processor Specifications

The network node processor must be installed in the Controller Expansion and powered via the ac outlet distribution box of the Controller Expansion (refer to "Controller Expansion: Internal Power Distribution" on page 47).

To protect the 3746 operations against disruptions due to an electrical outage, the Controller Expansion housing the network node processor should be powered from the same power source as the 3746 controller frame.

The Network Node Processor A and Network Node Processor B should be plugged into different blocks of the ac outlet distribution box so that if the fuse should blow on one block, one Network Node Processor will still be powered from the other block and thus continue operation. Referring to Figure 9 on page 48, Network

Node Processor-A is plugged into socket J2, and Network Node Processor-B is plugged into J5.

Alternately, if the configuration includes two ac outlet distribution boxes, either both in the same controller expansion or each in two different controller expansion, the NNP-A and NNP-B should be plugged in different ac outlet distribution boxes.

Desktop and Rack-Mountable (Type 6275) Model (FC 5423, FC 5049)

Network Node Processor Type 3 (FC 5423) Network Node Processor Upgrade to Type 3 (FC 5049)

Size:

- Width: 450 mm (17.7 in.) • Depth: 450 mm (17.7 in.)
- Height: 128 mm (5.0 in.): 4U when rack mounted.

Weight: 11.3 kg (25 lb)

Heat Output (maximum): 700 BTUs per hour (204 watts)

Electrical Input:

- Input voltage: single phase, 90-265 V ac, 50 or 60 Hz
- Input current: 0.52 kVA maximum.
- Power cord; see "Power Distribution in Controller Expansion" on page 49.

Rack-Mountable NNP (Type 7585) Model (FC 5122)

Network Node Processor Type 3 (FC 5122)

This model is no longer available from IBM.

Size:

- Width: 445 mm (17.5 in.)
- Depth: 444 mm (17.4 in.)
- Height: 171 mm (6.7 in.) 4U when rack mounted.

Weight: 15 kg (33.3 lb)

Heat Output (maximum):

1417 BTUs per hour (415 watts)

Electrical Input:

- Input voltage: single phase, 180-240 V ac, 50 or 60 Hz
- Input current:
 - 6.0 A maximum at 100 to 125V
 - 3.0 A maximum at 200 to 245V
- Power cord; see "Power Distribution in Controller Expansion" on page 49.

Rack-Mountable NNP (Type 3172) Model (FC 5022)

This model is no longer available from IBM.

Size:

• Depth: 444 mm (17.4 in.)

Height: 254 mm (10.00 in.): 6U when rack mounted

• Width: 444 mm (17.4 in.).

Weight: 19 kg (47 lb)

Heat Output (maximum):

850 BTUs per hour (250 watts)

Electrical Input

• Input voltage: single phase, 180 to 240 V ac, 50 or 60 Hz

• Input current: 2.5 A maximum

• Power cord length: 2.5 m (8.2-ft)

 Power plug: IEC (compatible with the ac outlet distribution box of the controller rack).

Ethernet Port Specifications (FC 5631 and FC 5632).

These features are no longer available for IBM.

An Ethernet network can be connected to a 3746-9x0 via an *Ethernet Port* (FC 5631). This feature consists of:

- TIC3
- · An Ethernet Bridge
- An Ethernet Bridge Connection Box (EBCB)
- Two connecting cables:
 - From the TIC3 to the connection box
 - From the connection box to the Ethernet Bridge.

The Ethernet-to-Token Ring Bridge (FC 5632) includes the same components as the Ethernet Port (FC 5631), except the TIC3. Both the bridge and its connection box are installed in the Controller Expansion, up to 6 meters (20 feet) from the 3746 Network Node, and powered via the ac outlet distribution box.

The components are installed as shown in Table 9.

Table 9. Where Components of the Ethernet Bridge Are Installed				
Component Where Installed				
TIC3	3746 Models 900 or 950			
Ethernet bridge connection box	Controller Expansion			
Ethernet bridge Controller Expansion				

The Ethernet bridge connection box is equivalent to the IBM 8228 Token-Ring Multi-Station Access Unit (MAU). It is installed in the Controller Expansion by IBM, refer to "Controller Expansion: Internal Power Distribution" on page 47.

Ethernet Bridge Specifications

The Ethernet bridge is equivalent to an IBM 8229.

Size:

Depth: 355.6 mm (14.00 in.)
Height: 133.4 mm (5.25 in.)
Width: 444.5 mm (17.50 in.).

Each bridge occupies 4 Us of height in the controller expansion.

Weight: 11.4 kg (25.1 lb)

Heat Output (maximum)

850 BTUs per hour (250 watts)

Electrical Input:

- Input voltage: single phase, 180 to 240 V ac, 50 or 60 Hz
- Input current: 1.5 A (2.5 A maximum)
- Power cord length: 2.5 m (8.2-ft)
- Power plug: IEC (compatible with the ac outlet distribution box of the controller expansion).

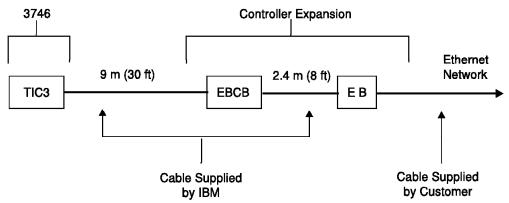
Note: To protect operations against disruptions due to an electrical outage, the Controller Expansion housing the Ethernet bridge should be powered via the same power source as the 3746 controller frame.

Cables:

With each Ethernet feature (FC 5631 or 5632), IBM supplies the cables (see Figure 7 and Table 10 on page 45) between:

- TIC3 and the Ethernet bridge connection box: 9 m (30 ft.)
- The Ethernet bridge connection box and the Ethernet bridge: 2.4 m (8 ft.).

The customer supplies the cable connecting the Ethernet bridge to the Ethernet network.



Legend:

EBCB = Ethernet Bridge Connection Box

EB = Ethernet Bridge

Figure 7. Components of the Ethernet Port

Note: Due to the position of the TIC3 in the 3746-9x0 and of the connection box (EBCB) in the controller expansion, the maximum distance between the 3746 and

the Controller Expansion may not exceed 6 m (20 ft.) when using the standard 9 m (30 ft.) TIC3 cable supplied with the Ethernet port feature.

Table 10. Part Numbers for Ethernet Bridge Cables						
Cable	Country	Part number				
TIC3 to Ethernet bridge connection box	All, Except U.S.A. U.S.A.	76F9441 76F9440				
Ethernet bridge connection box to Ethernet bridge	All	6339098				

If the distance between the 3746 and the Controller Expansion requires longer TIC3 cables to connect the Ethernet features, or if you need plenum cables (in the U.S.A. and Canada) instead of the standard cables, you need to order the cables described in Table 11.

Table 11. Pa	Table 11. Part Numbers for TIC3 Cables Greater than 9 m (30 feet)					
Country Part Maximum Cable Length number						
U.S.A. and Canada	72F1242	Up to 44 m (144 ft. plenum cable)				
All others	72F1236	Up to 44 m (144 ft.)				

Maximum Ethernet Configuration

A 3746 Network Node supports a maximum of eight Ethernet ports, each using a dedicated TIC3. Each Ethernet bridge connection box, however, can connect two bridges and their respective TIC3s. Thus, four connection boxes must be used to connect the eight bridges through to the eight TIC3s in the maximum configuration. This arrangement is shown in Figure 8 on page 46.

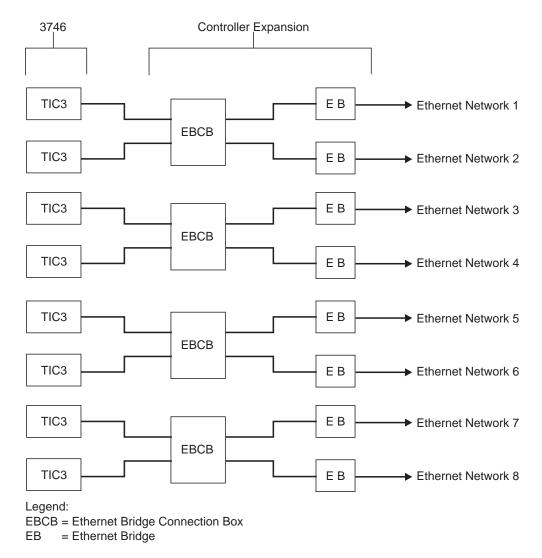


Figure 8. Maximum Configuration of Ethernet Bridges Allowed for One 3746 Network Node

Controller Expansion: Internal Power Distribution

The Controller Expansion (FC 5023) is required for the installation and the powering of the network node processor and Multiaccess Enclosure, and should also be used to house and/or power the service processor components. As an option, it can also be used for the installation of line connection boxes (LCBs) and/or Ethernet bridges. It is equipped with a power cord and one ac outlet distribution box. A second ac outlet distribution box (with its own power cord) may be configured to provide power input. You can have up to two Controller Expansions, each with two ac outlet distribution boxes.

Refer to "Power Cord Characteristics" on page 23 for information about the power cord and plug type of the Controller Expansion.

AC Outlet Distribution Boxes

The ac distribution box operates between 200 and 240 V ac (depending on your country and local conditions, the voltage may be outside of this range) and is installed in the lower-right corner on the rear of the controller expansion to power the network node processors, service processor, display, RSF modems (type 7858 only), existing Ethernet bridges, and optical disk drives or CD-ROM drive. It has a total of eight outlets with IEC connectors; the extra outlets allow for possible future upgrades of your controller. Depending on your 3746-9x0 configuration you may require extra outlets. Also to reduce the possibility of single power source loss, an optional ac outlet distribution box FC 5002 is available. See "Dual AC Outlet Distribution Box Option (FC 5002)" on page 49 for details of plugging.

Note: The RSF modem (if different from an IBM 7858) requires a customer-provided power receptacle.

The eight outlets are configured in two blocks of four; each block is protected by a fuse. See Table 12 and Figure 9 on page 48.

Table 12. ac Power Outlets and Fuses				
Fuse	Block			
F1 (6 Amps)	Lower block J1 to J4			
F2 (6 Amps)	Upper block J5 to J8			

Single AC Outlet Distribution Box Option

In a Controller Expansion with one ac distribution box installed, units should be plugged into the positions shown (sockets are numbered from the bottom (J1) to the top (J8)):

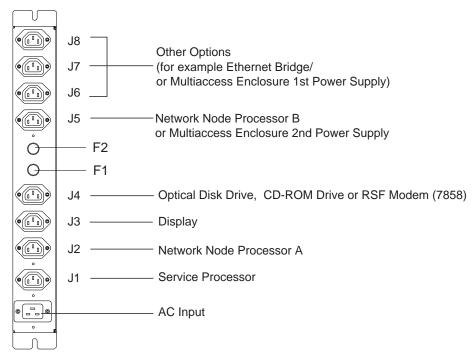


Figure 9. Power Plugging on a Single ac Outlet Distribution Box

Notes:

- These unit plugging guidelines are calculated not to exceed the F1 or F2 current rating. Therefore units should not be shuffled from the fuse group that is recommended.
- 2. If the Multiaccess Enclosure second power supply option is installed, it is recommended that the second ac outlet distribution box is also added, refer to "Dual AC Outlet Distribution Box Option (FC 5002)" on page 49.

Dual AC Outlet Distribution Box Option (FC 5002)

To reduce the risk of outage due to power failure, a Controller Expansion can be equipped with two ac outlet distribution boxes. The Controller Expansion components units should be plugged into the positions shown in Figure 10.

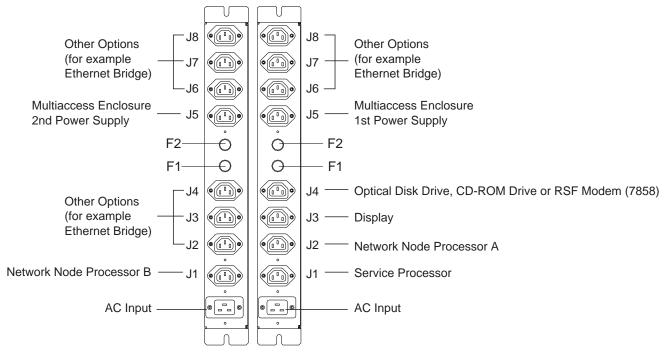


Figure 10. Power Plugging on Dual ac Outlet Distribution Boxes

Power Distribution in Controller Expansion

Two 2.5 m (8.2-ft) power cords with IEC plugs at both ends (part number 58G5783, see Figure 11) are provided with the service processor to power the service processor system unit and color display. If an IBM 7858 is used for the RSF modem, a third IEC power cord is also shipped.



Figure 11. IEC-IEC Power Cord

The network node processor, Ethernet Port², and Multiaccess Enclosure features are automatically supplied with an IEC-IEC 2.5 m (8.2-ft) power cord. If the Multiaccess Enclosure is configured with the optional ac power supply, a second IEC-IEC 2.5 m (8.2-ft) power cord is shipped.

² No longer manufactured.

Service Processor Power Cords

Two IEC power cords are shipped with the service processor to power the system units and color display from the ac outlet distribution box of the Controller Expansion. If an IBM 7858 is used for the RSF modem, a third IEC power cord is also shipped.

If a Controller Expansion is not included in the order or the installed machine configuration, the following country-dependent power cords are shipped with the service processor (in addition to the two IEC power cords):

- System unit:
 - U.S.A., Canada, and Japan: 200/220 V ac, non-locking plug (NEMA 6-15P)
 - Other countries: 220 V ac, country standard plug.
- Color display unit:
 - U.S.A., Canada, and Japan: 100/110 V ac, non-locking plug (NEMA 5-15P)
 - Other countries: 220 V ac, country standard plug.

RSF Modem

The RSF modem can be installed in the Controller Expansion, but a separate 110 V or 220 V ac power receptacle (not on the ac outlet distribution box) must be used for RSF modems different from the IBM 7858, refer to "RSF Modem" on page 40

Controller Expansion: Physical Layout

The figures on pages 53 to 57 show the recommended locations for the service processor components, network node processors, Multiaccess Enclosure and LCBs.

The location and amount of the components in the Controller Expansion can be different depending on the type of service processor and NNP installed.

Each feature, service processor (FC 5053), network node processor (FC 5423), and Multiaccess Enclosure (FC 3001) is shipped with the hardware required for its installation in the controller expansion.

The service processor rack-mount kit (FC 5029) provides all components for re-installation of an existing service processor in the controller expansion, for example, when upgrading the service processor to type 3 (FC 5050). This kit contains:

- · Brackets or plate for the display.
- · Brackets for control unit.
- Drawer for keyboard, mouse, modem, and optical disk or CD-ROM drive.
- Three power cords with IEC plug at both ends to power the service processor components from the 220V internal distribution of Controller Expansion.

Moving the Service Processor into the Controller Expansion

Any stand-alone service processor (desktop or tower model) can be reinstalled in the Controller Expansion. This normally occurs when upgrading a 3746-900 to a 3746-950 or to a 3746-900 with a NNP. The existing power cords are removed and replaced by the IEC power cords shipped with the Service Processor Rack-Mount Kit (FC 5029).

If the controller expansion is not equipped with the hardware required for the reinstallation of the service processor components (system unit, display, keyboard and so on), the Service Processor Rack Mount Kit is required.

However, the keyboard and mouse of the desktop and tower service processors (types 9577 and 9585) cannot be housed in existing Controller Expansions as they will not fit into the service drawer of the Controller Expansion. Previously shipped Controller Expansion service drawers can only hold a keyboard with the following dimensions:

- 365 mm (14.4 in.) wide
- 45 mm (1.8 in.) height
- 200 mm (7.9 in.) deep.

An IBM keyboard (with the trackpoint device), part number 61G2900, or equivalent fits into this type of service drawer.

Display and Keyboard Installation Outside the Controller Expansion

The color display and keyboard for a rack-mountable service processor can be installed outside the Controller Expansion while leaving the service processor system unit in the Controller Expansion. In this case, longer cables are required (which are provided with the service processor):

- The keyboard requires the longer 4 m (13.1-ft) cable, part number 58G1271.
- The display requires the 4 m (13.1 ft) cable extender, part number 59G1270.

The length of the IEC power cord, 2.5 m (8.2-ft), allows the color display to be powered via the power distribution strip of the Controller Expansion.

Configuration with Service Processor (Type 6275), NNP (Type 6275) and MAE

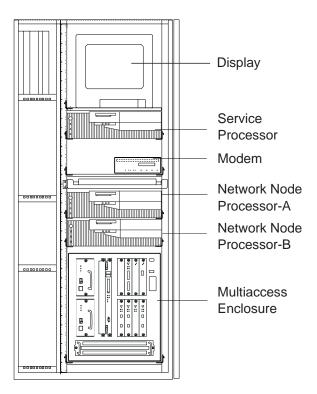
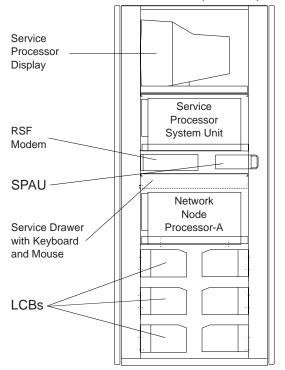


Figure 12. Controller Expansion with a service processor (Type 6275), Two NNPs (Type 6275) and a MAE

Configuration with Service Processor and One NNP (Types 3172)

 3172^3 is the machine type of service processors part numbers 41H7520 and 55H7630 (FC 5021) and NPP Type 1 (FC 5022).



Service Processor Display Docs Service Processor System Unit Optical Disk Drive RSF Modem ъ Service Drawer Network Node Processor-A Distribution AC Outlet **LCBs**

Figure 13. Right Side View of Controller Expansion with a service processor and a Network Node Processor (Type 3172)

Figure 14. Front View of Controller Expansion with a service processor and a Network Node Processor (Type 3172)

Legend:

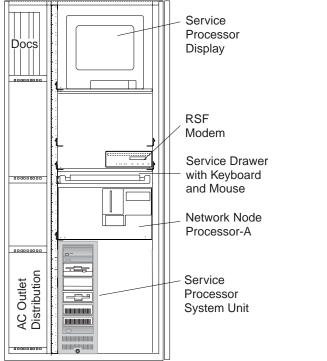
LCBsLine connection boxesRSFRemote Support FacilitySPAUService Processor Access UnitDocsFree area for documentation

³ No longer manufactured.

Configuration with Service Processor (Types 9577 and 9585) and One NNP (Type 3172)

95774 is the machine type of service processor (FC 5020). 95854 is the machine type of service processor type 1 (FC 5021). 31724 is the machine type of the NPP Type 1 (FC 5022).

Docs



with Keyboard and Mouse Network Node Processor-A AC Outlet Distribution **LCBs**

Figure 15. Front View of Controller Expansion with Tower Service Processor (Type 9585)

Figure 16. Front View of Controller Expansion with Desktop Service Processor (Type 9577)

Service

Display

Service Processor System Unit

RSF Modem

Service Drawer

Processor

⁴ No longer manufactured.

Configuration with Service Processor (Types 3172 and 9585) and Two Network Node Processors (Type 3172)

9585 is the machine type of service processor type 1 (FC5021).

3172⁵ is the machine type of service processors part numbers 41H7520 and 55H7630 (FC 5021) and NPP Type 1 (FC 5022).

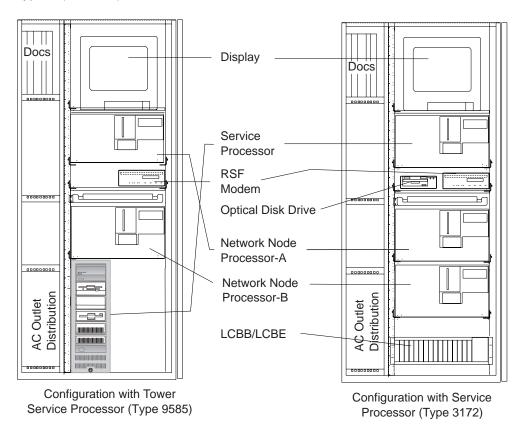


Figure 17. Front View of Controller Expansion with a service processor and Two NNPs (Type 3172)

⁵ No longer manufactured.

Addition of a Multiaccess Enclosure to a Configuration with One NNP (Type 3172)

The Multiaccess Enclosure feature is shipped with the hardware required for its installation in the Controller Expansion

Figure 18 shows the recommended location for the Multiaccess Enclosure. Because of the maximum cable length, the MAE with Direct Attachment (FC 3001) must be within 6 meters (20 feet) of the 3746 Model 900 or 950 frame.

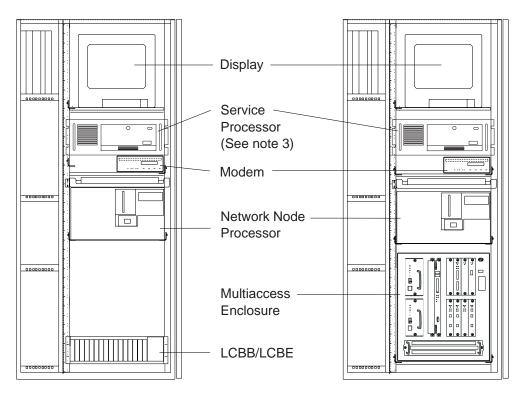


Figure 18. Front View of Controller Expansion with a service processor, and One NNP (Type 3172). The Multiaccess Enclosure has been added to the right Controller Expansion

Notes:

- 1. The Multiaccess Enclosure may need to be installed in a second controller expansion. This depends on the number and type of NNPs (types 31726, 75856, or 6275), refer to "Controller Expansion Inventory Charts" on page 59.
- 2. The location and amount of the components in the Controller Expansion can be different depending on the number and type of NNPs (types 31726, 75856, or 6275), refer to "Controller Expansion Inventory Charts" on page 59.
- 3. A service processor type 2 (type 75856) or type 3 (type 6275) is required in configurations that include the MAE (FC 3001).

⁶ No longer manufactured.

Configurations with Ethernet Features

These features are no longer manufactured. The service processor and NNPs in Figure 19 are types 31727.

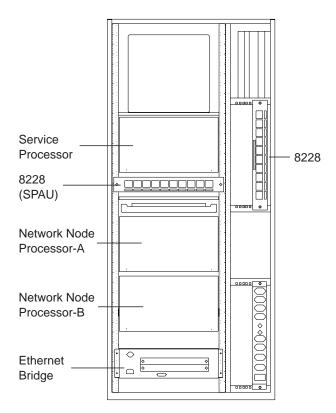


Figure 19. Rear View of Controller Expansion-A with One Ethernet Bridge Installed

⁷ No longer manufactured.

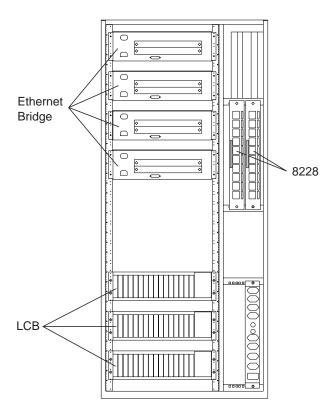


Figure 20. Rear View of Controller Expansion-B with Four Ethernet Bridges Installed

Controller Expansion Inventory Charts

Use these drawing to set up the units on the front side of the controller expansion. For the units that can be installed on the rear, refer to Figure 22 on page 60.

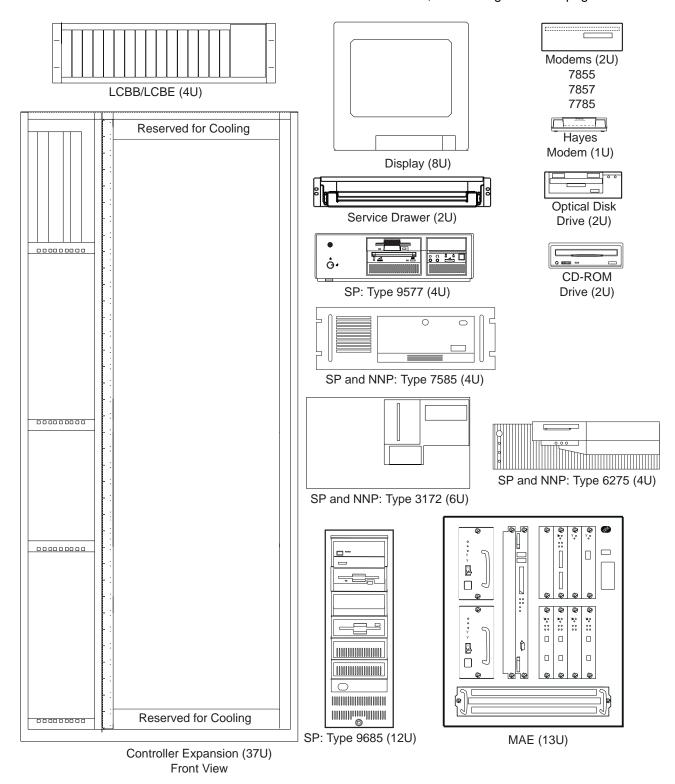


Figure 21. Controller Expansion Inventory Chart (Front View)

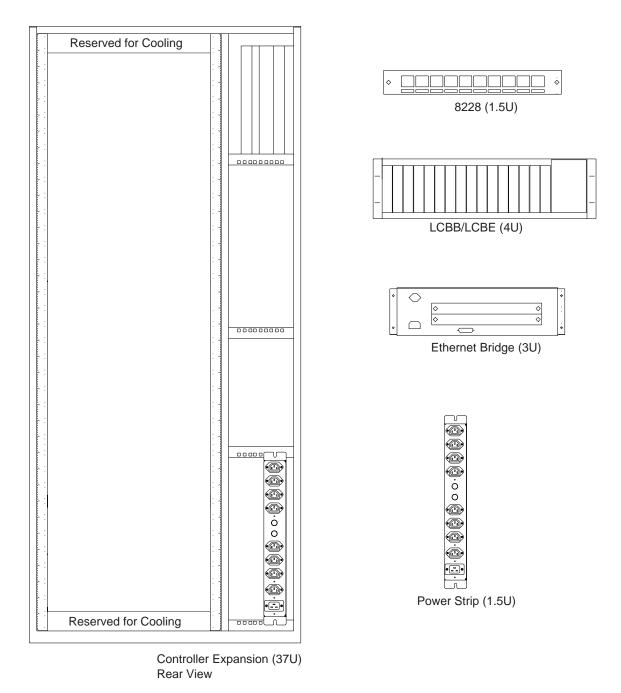


Figure 22. Controller Expansion Inventory Chart (Rear View)

Notes:

- 1. The units dimensions are scaled to the size of the controller expansion diagram. The values represent the size used to set up the units in the controller expansion; it is not the size of the units themselves.
- The attachment holes along each side of the controller expansion are divided into units of measure called EIA units. Each EIA unit (U) equals 44.5 millimeters (1.75 inches).
- 3. The controller expansion is 37 U high but only 35 are usable. One U must be reserved at the top and bottom for proper cooling.

Explanation of Cable Characteristics

The letters in the following sections define the columns in the cable tables that start on page 64.

Cables to be Ordered and Installed <a>

Cables that may have to be ordered and installed with the 3745/3746 features are:

- Channel attachment and emergency power-off cables (refer to page 64and 66).
- ESCON jumper and emergency power-off (refer to page 68).
- Service processor attachment (refer to page 71).
- Token-ring and high-speed line attachment (refer to page 76).
- Low-/medium-speed Line Attachment (refer to page 83).
- Active Remote Connectors (ARCs) (refer to page 84).

FC

The order code of each attachment feature is given if applicable.

LIC Type <c>

The type of LIC corresponding to the line is given if applicable.

Cable Lengths

Three types of cable length are available:

Fixed-Length Cables <d> <e>: Cable lengths are given in column <e>.

In Europe, Middle East, Africa countries, these cables may be automatically delivered with the 3745/3746 or 3746 upgrade, depending on the FC in column
d> and the country. For the 3746-9x0, this applies to the ESCON jumper cables, LIC12 cables, and token-ring cables. This requires the specify code 2999 in the 3745/3746 configuration.

In other countries, order fixed-length cables (for example ESCON jumper, LIC12, or token-ring) by their cable group number in column <d>.

The part numbers of fixed-length cables are not included in these tables. They are the same as those given in column <f> for short cables.

Custom-Length Short Cables < f > < g > : Order these cables by their part number in Europe, Middle East, Africa countries or by their cable group number (CG) in other countries. Specify the required length up to the maximum length given in column < g > :

Custom-Length Long Cables <h > <i>: Order these cables by their part number in column <h > and indicate the required length up to the maximum length given in column <i>.

Country <j> <k>

Features may or may not be available in a particular country:

- Column <j> for the U.S.A., Canada, Latin American, Asian, and Pacific countries.
- Column <k> for the Europe, Middle East, Africa countries.

In these two columns:

- Y means that the feature is available.
- N means that the feature is not available.

How to Determine Cable Length

To determine a cable length, add the following distances:

- 1. From the bottom of the 3745/3746 frame to the bottom of the attached device, including:
 - Cable routing and bends
 - Twice the height of the raised floor, if any.
- 2. From the bottom of the attached device to its connector.

Except for the ARCs, the cable is shipped with a length equal to the ordered length, plus 1.5 m (5-ft) to take into consideration the cable length required inside the machine.

See Selecting and Ordering IBM Machine External Cables, GA23-0278.

Frame < 1>: This column gives the name of the frame or frames to which the cables must be connected. The following abbreviations are used:

- BF is 3745 (base frame)
- 11 is 3746-A11
- 13 is 3746-L13
- 14 is 3746-L14
- 15 is 3746-L15.

Cabling Identification

Use Chapter 3 to prepare the cabling plan. It provides information on how to use the plugging sheets. There is a set of example plugging sheets starting on page 142.

Cable Weight

Communication data line cable weights up to 0.35 kg/m (0.25 lb/ft) for the heaviest cable.

Plenum Cables

For details on plenum cables refer to the National Electrical Code, ZR23-4223. The plenum cables are listed in the following tables.

Modems

Refer to page 72, and also see Power Supply and Telecommunication Connections for IBM Modems, GA33-0054 for modem cable information.

For the Hayes modem, the cables are shipped according to the modem part number ordered. Refer to Table 13 on page 72.

Cable Information

Channel Attachment Cables and Emergency Power-Off Cables (3745 Model 17A)

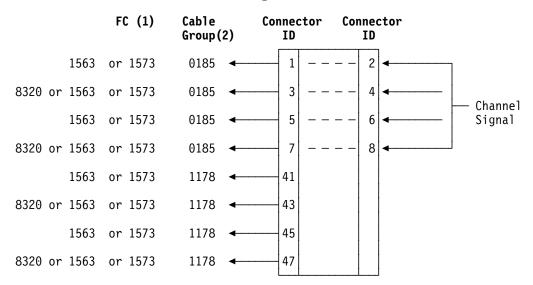
Feature				According to You	ur F	Requireme	ents, O	rder:		Cou	ntry
Channel Adapter,				Fixed—Length Cable (See Note 2)			Custom—Length Cable (See Note 3 and Note 4)			USA	
TPS, and Emergency Power Off (EPO) (See Note 1) a	FC b	Conn ID b	No. of Cables	CG d	Le m	ength (ft) e	CG	Part or Numbe h	Maximum Length m i (ft)	LA AP	AP E/ME/A
First channel	1563 or 1573	1	2	0185	12	(40)	0185	546018	122 (400)	Υ	Y
Second channel	1563 or 1573	3	2	0185	12	(40)	0185	546018	122(400)		
first TPS	8320	3	2	0185	12	(40)	0185	546018	122 (400)]	
Third channel	1563 or 1573	5	2	0185	12	(40)	0185	546018	122 (400)		
Fourth channel	1563 or 1573	7	2	0185	12	(40)	0185	546018	122 (400)		
second TPS	8320	7	2	0185	12	(40)	0185	546018	122 (400)		
First EPO	1563 or 1573	41	1				1178	535117	3 122 (400)		
Second EPO	1563 or 1573 or 8320	43	1			1178	535117	3 122 (400)			
Third EPO	1563 or 1573	45	1	(See Note	(See Note 5) 1178 5351178 122(400) 1178 5351178 122(400)						
Fourth EPO	1563 or 1573 or 8320	47	1						3 122 (400)		

TPS = two-processor switch.

Notes:

- 1. The emergency power-off (EPO) cable is also called the power control cable.
- 2. The fixed-length standard cable group 0185 is available in Europe, Middle East, Africa only. It is automatically shipped with each channel adapter and TPS when FC 2999 is specified in the 3745 configuration.
- 3. For data streaming, the maximum cumulative cable length is 122 m (400-ft) unless modified by system or channel limitation. Maximum cable length must be reduced by 4.5 m (15-ft) for each control unit between the 3745 and the channel.
 - For non-data streaming, the maximum length is 61 m (200-ft) unless modified by the general control-to-channel cabling schematic.
- 4. In the U.S.A., Canada, Latin America, Asia Pacific countries, order cables by group number up to the maximum length specified.
- 5. The EPO fixed-length standard cable is no longer shipped with the channel adapter or TPS in Europe, Middle East, Africa countries. If an EPO cable is required, order it by P/N up to the maximum length.

3745 Model 17A Channel Cabling Schematic



Notes:

- 1. Each of the two-processor switches (FC 8320) takes the place of one channel adapter (FC 1563) or one buffer chaining channel adapter (BCCA) (FC 1573).
- 2. Cable group for signal cables is 0185. Cable group for power control cables is 1178.
- 3. Each of the four possible power control cables (1178) can be associated to any of the four possible channel attachments. Therefore, a host with a channel attachment to the 3746 Model 900 can power control the 3745 and 3746 Model 900 units via one power control cable.
- 4. For a 3745 with 3746-900, one of the four possible power control cable connection IDs of the 3745 must be reserved for internal power control.

Channel Attachment Cables and EPO Cables (3745 Models 21A, 31A, 41A 61A, and 3746 Model A11)

Feature				According to Yo	ur	Requirem	ents, O	rder:		Со	untry	
Channel adapter, CATPS, and			Number	Fixed—Length Cab (See Note 2)	le			m—Length Ca Note 3 and		USA CAN		
Emergency Power Off (EPO) (See Note 1) a	FC b	Conn ID b		CG d	m	Length (ft) e	CG	Part or Number h	Maximum Length m i (ft)	LA LA AP j	E/ME/A k	Frame 1
First CATPS or 1st and 2nd Channel Adapters	1562 or or 1561 or 1571 1581 1561 or 1571		2	0185 0185	12 12	. ,	0185 0185		122(400) 122(400)	Y	Y	BF
Second CATPS or 3rd and 4th Channel Adapters	1562 1561 or 1571 or or 1561 or 1571 1581 1561 or 1571		2	0185 0185	12 12	(-,	0185 0185		122(400) 122(400)			
Third CATPS or 5th and 6th Channel Adapters	1562 1561 or 1571 or or 1561 or 1571		2	0185 0185	12 12	(-,	0185 0185		122(400)			
Fourth CATPS or 7th and 8th Channel Adapters	1562 1561 or 1571 or or 1581 1561 or 1571		2	0185 0185	12	` ,	0185	5460185	122(400)			
Fifth CATPS or 9th and 10th	1562 1561 or 1571 or or 1581 1561 or 1571	17	2 2	0185	12	(40)	0185	5460185	122(400)			A11
	1562 1561 or 1571 or or 1581 1561 or 1571		2	0185 0185	12	(40)	0185 0185	5460185	122(400)			
Seventh CATPS or 12th and 13th Channel Adapters		25 27	2 2	0185 0185	12 12	(-,	0185 0185		122(400) 122(400)			
Eighth CATPS or 14th and 15th Channel Adapters			2 2	0185 0185	12 12		0185 0185		122(400) 122(400)			
1st EPO 2nd EPO	1561, 1562, 1571, 1581 1561, 1562, 1571, 1581	ļ	1				1178 1178		122(400)			BF
3rd EPO	1561, 1562, 1571, 1581	<u> </u>	1				1178		122 (400)			
4th EPO	1561, 1562, 1571, 1581	47	1	(See Note	5)		1178	5351178	122(400)			
5th EPO	1561, 1562, 1571, 1581	 	1	(323 11000	٠,		1178		122 (400)			
7th EPO	1561, 1562, 1571, 1581 1561, 1562, 1571, 1581	 	1		1178 5351178 122 (400) 1178 5351178 122 (400)			<u> </u>				
8th EPO	1561, 1562, 1571, 1581	55	1				1178	5351178	122(400)			

CATPS is channel adapter with two processor switch.

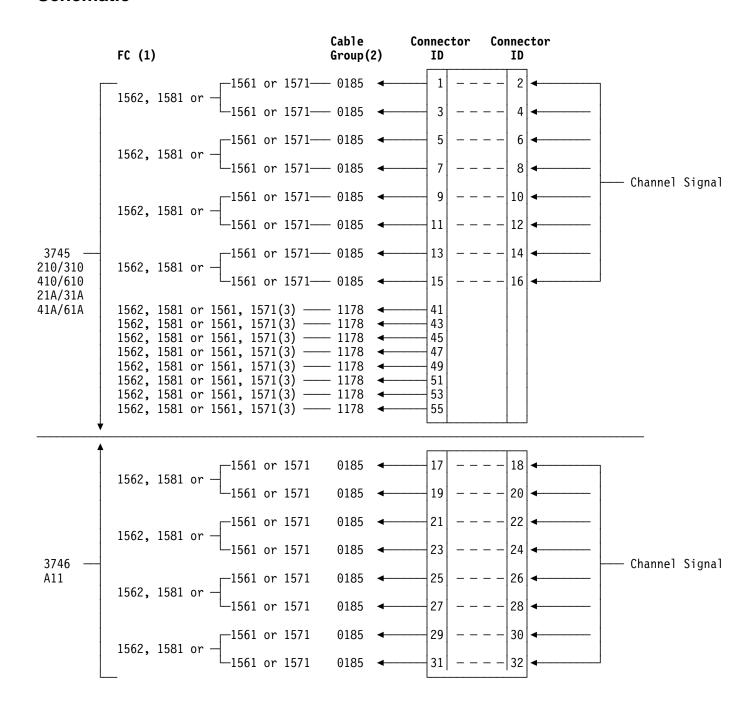
Notes:

- The emergency power-off (EPO) cable is also called the power control cable.
 The fixed-length cable (group 0185) is available in Europe, Middle East, Africa countries only. It is automatically shipped with each channel adapter and CATPS, when FC 2999 is specified in the 3745 configuration.
- 3. For data streaming, the maximum cumulative cable length is 122 m (400-ft) unless modified by system or channel limitation. Maximum cable length must be reduced by 4.5 m (15-ft) for each control unit between the 3745 and the

For non data streaming, the maximum length is 61 m (200-ft) unless modified by general control-to-channel cabling schematic.

- 4. In the U.S.A., Canada, Latin America, Asia Pacific countries, order cables by group number up to the maximum length specified.
- 5. The EPO fixed-length standard cable is no longer shipped with the channel adapter or CATPS in Europe, Middle East, Africa countries. If an EPO cable is required, order it by P/N up to the maximum length.

3745 Models 21A, 31A, 41A, 61A, and 3746 Model A11 Channel Cabling Schematic



Notes:

- 1. Each channel adapter with two-processor switch (CA FC 1562 or BCCA FC 1581) takes the place of two channel adapters (FC 1561) or of two buffer chaining channel adapters (FC 1571)
- 2. Cable group for signal cables is 0185. Cable group is 1178 for power control cables.
- 3. Each of the 8 possible power control cables (1178) can be associated to any of the 16 possible channel attachments. Therefore, a host with a channel attachment to the 3746 Model A11 or 900 can power control the 3745 and 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controllers via one power control cable.
- 4. For a 3745 with 3746-900, one of the eight possible power control cable connection IDs of the 3745 must be reserved for internal power control.

ESCON Jumper Cables and Emergency Power-Off Cables (3746-9x0)

For general information about ESCON planning, refer to Planning for Enterprise Systems Connection Links, GA23-0367.

The ESCON channel adapters use multimode fibers (LED). Multimode fiber-optic jumper cables with duplex connectors at both ends are required to directly connect the 3746 to ESCON channels, or ESCON Directors. A fixed-length duplex-to-duplex 62.5/125-micron multimode fiber-optic jumper cable is either automatically shipped or must be ordered for each ESCON channel coupler of the 3746, as indicated in Figure 23 on page 69.

Note: IBM recommends using IBM duplex-to-duplex jumper cables between the ESCON-capable device (3746) and distribution panels. In some cases, attaching a jumper cable to a distribution panel could require jumper cables with other connector types for the distribution panel end, (for example, Duplex-to-ST jumper cables or Duplex-to-FC/PC jumper cables), depending upon the type of connectors used by the ESCON trunk cable and the type of couplers/adapters available on the distribution panel.

Notes for Figure 23 on page 69

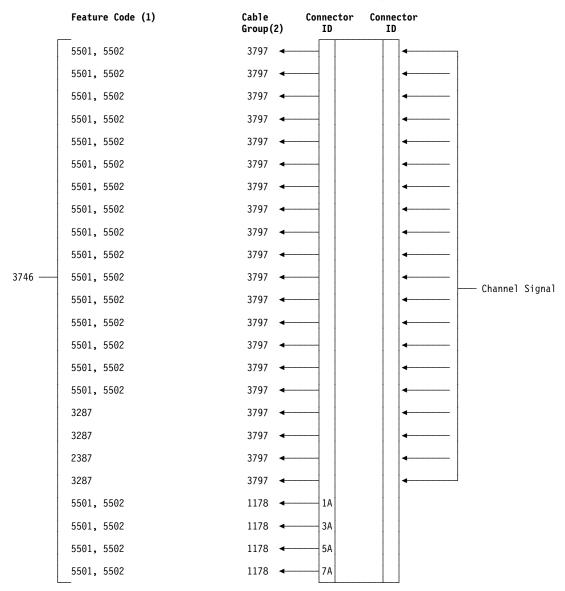
- 1. The emergency power-off (EPO) cable is also called the power control cable.
- 2. To order, specify cable group 3797 and one of these lengths, as determined by the IBM Installation Planning Representative.
- 3. When using the specify code 2999 in your configuration order, the 31 m (100 ft) jumper cable is automatically shipped with the ESCON coupler. If it is determined by the IBM Installation Planning Representative that another length is required, order one of the other fixed-length cables by part number and length.
- 4. To order, specify cable group 1178, and a length not exceeding the maximum
- 5. Custom-length duplex-to-duplex jumper cables up to 500 m (1640-ft), jumper cables with a duplex connector at one end (3746) and another type of connector at the other end (distribution panel), and fiber optic adapters and couplers used in distribution panels can be purchased from IBM.
- 6. The EPO fixed-length standard cable is no longer shipped with the ESCON coupler in the Europe, Middle East, and Africa countries. If an EPO cable is required, order it by P/N up to the maximum length.
- 7. FC 5501 (ESCON Coupler Type 1) cannot be ordered for the 3746-950. FC 3287 (ESCON Channel Adapter) can be ordered with the Multiaccess Enclosure.

The notes for the figure below are on page 68.

Feature			Acco	rding to Y	our Requirements, Order:					
ESCON Coupler & Emergency			Fixed—Length C	able	Custom—Length Cab	le				
Power Off (EPO) (See note 1) a	FC b	Cables	Part CG or Number d	Length m (ft) e	Part CG or Number f	Maximum Length m g (ft)				
ESCON (except Europe, Middle East, and Africa)	5501 5502 3287 (See note 7)	1	3797 (See note 2)	4 (12) 7 (20) 13 (40) 22 (70) 31 (100) 46 (150) 61 (200) 77 (250) 92 (300) 107 (350) 122 (400)	14F3797 (See note 5)	500 (1640)				
EPO (except Europe, Middle East, and Africa)	5501 5502 3287 (See note 7)	1			1178 5351178 (See note 4)	122 (400)				
ESCON (Europe, Middle East, and Africa)	5501 5502 (See note 7)	1	74F5416 (See note 3) 74F5412 74F5413 74F5414 74F5415 74F9718 74F9419 74F9420 74F9420 74F9421 74F5418	31 (100) 4 (12) 7 (20) 13 (40) 22 (70) 46 (150) 61 (200) 77 (250) 92 (300) 107 (350) 122 (400)	74F5436 (See note 5)	500 (1640)				
EPO (Europe, Middle East, and Africa)	5501 5502 (See note 7)	1	(See Not	e 6)	5351178	122 (400)				

Figure 23. ESCON Jumper and EPO Cables

3746 Models 900 and 950 Channel Cabling Schematic



Notes:

- FC 5501 (ESCON Coupler Type 1) cannot be ordered for the 3746-950. FC 3287 (ESCON Channel Adapter) can be ordered with the Multiaccess Enclosure.
- 2. Cable group for signal cables is 3797. Cable group for power control cables is 1178.

Service Processor and Network Node Processor Attachment Cables

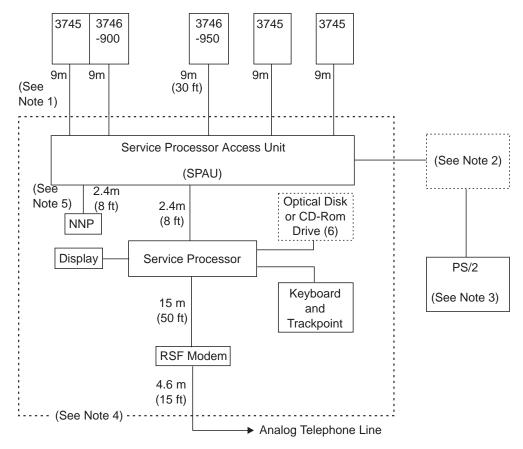


Figure 24. Service Processor Attachment Cables (3745 Models 17A, 21A, 31A, 41A, 61A, and 3746-900/950)

Notes:

In the following notes, the part numbers are supplied for replacement purposes:

- 1. Token-ring cable shipped automatically with each 3745 and 3746-9x0. The part number are:
 - U.S.A. and Canada: 76F9440
 - For all other countries: 76F9441.

If the 9-m cable is not long enough to connect the 3745/3746-9x0 to the SPAU, the Part No 72F1242 for U.S.A. and Canada plenum cable or Part No 72F1236 should be ordered. Refer to page 76 for token-ring cable lengths.

- 2. Connections to user token-ring LAN (16 Mbps) and/or an IBM PS/2 used as an alternate/remote console.
- 3. LAN-Attached console (via a token-ring).
- 4. The following signal cables are shipped automatically with the service processor:
 - Service processor to SPAU cable, part number 6339098.
 - Service processor to RSF modem cable, part number 782984 (an adapter 782985).
 - Service processor to display, including a 4 meter (13.1-ft) cable extender, part number 59G1270.
 - Service Processor to keyboard/trackpoint. A 4 meter (13.1-ft) cable is also included, part number 59G1271.
 - · Modem telephone cable.

In the U.S.A. and Canada, the previously available desktop model of the service processor (type 9577) had an integrated RSF modem with a 15 m (49.2-ft) modem telephone cable, part number 58G5297.

- 5. Network node processor to SPAU token-ring cable, part number 6339098. This cable is automatically shipped with the network node processor.
- 6. Separate for older versions of the service processor (no longer available from IBM).

RSF Modem

A modem is required for connection to the IBM Remote Support Facility (RSF). The user must provide access to a dedicated analog line of the public switched telephone network, so that the service processor can automatically dial into the IBM Remote Support Facility.

This line can also be used for remote console access from the IBM Support Center to the 3745 and 3746 via the switched telephone network.

The RSF modem is:

- Shipped with the service processor
- Installed by IBM.

Refer to "RSF Modem" on page 40 for the RSF modem characteristics.

The part numbers in the following 43-11 to 43-13 tables are provided for information, in case of replacement needs.

Hayes RSF Modem Part Number to Country Reference

Table 13. Hayes Modem P/Ns				
Country	Part Number			
UK	03K5378			
France	03K5371			
Germany	03K5372			
Netherlands	03K5367			
Denmark	03K5369			
Sweden	03K5379			
Finland	03K5370			
Switzerland	03K5380			
Norway	03K5377			
Iceland	03K5374			
Australia	03K5366			
China	03K5368			

Table 14. Hayes Modem P/Ns				
Country	Part Number			
Hong Kong	03K5373			
Malaysia	03K5373			
Singapore	03K5373			
Indonesia	03K5375			
India	03K5375			
Philippines	03K5375			
Thailand	03K5375			
Sri Lanka	03K5375			
Vietnam	03K5375			
New Zealand	03K5376			
Taiwan	03K5381			
U.S.A.	03K5365			
Canada	03K5365			

Note: Ordering the part number next to a country will supply the Hayes modem with all the correct power and line cables for that country.

IBM 7857 RSF Modem Telephone Cables

Table 15. IBM 7857 Modem Cables					
Country	Part Number				
Albania	89G2554				
Argentina	89G2554				
Australia	89G2564				
Austria	89G2544				
Belgium	89G2545				
Bolivia	89G2554				
Brazil	89G2554				
Bulgaria	89G2554				
Canada	89G2562				
China	89G2554				
Colombia	89G2554				
Costa Rica	89G2554				
Croatia	89G2554				
Cyprus	89G2577				
Czech Republic	89G2554				
Denmark	89G2546				
Egypt	89G2554				
El Salvador	89G2554				
Ecuador	89G2554				
Finland	89G2547				
France	89G2548				

Table 15. IBM 7857 Modem Cables				
Country	Part Number			
Germany	89G2549			
Greece	89G2554			
Guatemala	89G2554			
Honduras	89G2554			
Hong Kong	89G2565			
Hungary	89G2554			
Iceland	89G3145			
Ireland	89G2554			
Israel	89G3131			
Italy	89G2551			
Japan	89G2562			
Korea	89G2554			
Kuwait	89G2554			
Luxemburg	89G3134			
Macedonia	89G2554			
Mexico	89G2554			
Netherlands	89G2552			
New Zealand	89G2577			
Norway	89G2553			
Pakistan	89G2554			
Panama	89G2554			

Table 15. IBM 7 Cables	857 Modem
Country	Part Number
Paraguay	89G2554
Peru	89G2554
Poland	89G2554
Portugal	89G2554
Romania	89G2554
Russia	89G2554
Saudi Arabia	89G2554
Slovakia	89G2554
Slovenia	89G2554
South Africa	89G3135
Spain	89G2554
Sweden	89G2555
Switzerland	89G2556
Taiwan	89G2554
Thailand	89G2554
Turkey	89G2554
UK	89G2577
Ukraine	89G2554
Uruguay	89G2554
U.S.A.	89G2562
Venezuela	89G2554

IBM 7855 RSF Modem Telephone Cables

Table 16. IBM 7855 Modem Cables									
Country	Part Number								
Albania	66X0879								
Argentina	53F6095								
Austria	74F4485								
Belgium	74F4507								
Bosnia	See note								
Bulgaria	66X0879								
Canada	53F6095								
Chile	53F6095								
China	74F4504								
Croatia	See note								
Cyprus	03F7852								
Czech Republic	66X0879								
Denmark	74F4488								
Egypt	See note								

Part Number						
74F4493						
See note						
74F4504						
66X0879						
74F4502						
93F1532						
74F4498						
53F6095						
66X0879						
See note						
74F4500						
03F7852						
74F4490						

Table 16. IBM 7 Cables	855 Modem						
Country	Part Number						
Pakistan	66X0879						
Philippines	53F6095						
Poland	See note						
Portugal	See note						
Saudi Arabia	See note						
Serbia	See note						
Slovenia	See note						
South Africa	66X2114						
Spain	93F1528						
Sweden	74F4502						
Thailand	74F4504						
UK	74F4504						
Uruguay	89G2554						
U.S.A.	53F6095						
Venezuela	89G2554						

Note: The cable with a part number 74F8370 is supplied with spade lugs on one end instead of a plug.

Token-Ring Attachment and High-Speed Line Attachment Cables (3745)

Feature			Acco	rding	j to '	Your I	Requi	rements	s, Or	rder:				Country	y	
		Maximum					Cı	ustom—I	Lengt	th Cal	ble					
Token-Ring		Number of	Fixed—Len Cable		ıgtn	Short Cable					Long	g Cable		Ų.S.A.		
Attachment and High-Speed Line a	FC b	Cables per Feature a	CG d	Lenç m e	gth:e (ft)	CG		Part Number	Leng	imum gth (ft)	Part Number h	Leng	imum gth (ft)	CAN LA AP j	E/ME/A	Frame
Token-ring attachment	(See Note 7)	2	1666 (See	l	• •	1667	63	1X3229	21.3	3(70)	61X3229	44.2	2(145)	Y	N	BF
Token-ring attachment (plenum cable)	(See Note 7)	2	(See	Note	e 6)		76	6F8641	21.3	3(70)	76F8641	44.2	2(145)	U.S.A. Canada	N	
Token-ring attachment	(See Note 7)	2	1666 (See	9 Note	(30) e 6)	1667	63	1X3229	21.3	3(70)	61X3229	44.2	2(145)	N	Y	
V.35 DCE (See Notes 1 and 2)	(See Note 8)	1	5831	10	(33)	5830	58	8X9344	10	(33)	58X9344	35 (See Note	(115)	Y	Y	
V.35 DCE (See Note 1) (plenum cable)	(See Note 8)	1					76	6F8633	10	(33)	76F8633	35 (See Note	(115)	U.S.A. Canada	N	
X.21 DCE (See Notes 1 and 2)	(See Note 8)	1	5833	10	(33)	5832	58	8X9345	10	(33)				Y	Y	
X.21 DCE (See Note 1) (plenum cable)	(See Note 8)	1					76	6F8634	10	(33)				U.S.A. Canada	N	
V.35 direct att. (See Note 1)	(See Note 8)	1	5837 (See	10 Note	(33)	5836	58	8X9347	10	(33)	58X9347	100	(328)	Y	Y	
V.35 direct att. (See Note 1) (plenum cable)	(See Note 8)	1					76	6F8635	10	(33)	76F8635	100	(328)	U.S.A. Canada	N	
X.21 direct att. (See Note 1)	(See Note 8)	1	5839 (See	10 Note	(33)	5838	58	8X9348	10	(33)				Y	Y	
X.21 direct att. (See Note 1) (plenum cable)	(See Note 8)	1					76	6F8636	10	(33)				U.S.A. Canada	N	
X.21 Transfix (See Notes 2 and 4)	(See Note 8)	1	5835	10	(33)	5834	58	8X9346	10	(33)				N	Y	
X.21 EIA-547 DCE	(See Note 8)	1	5844	10	(33)	5842	13	1F4837	10	(33)	11F4837	35	(115)	Y	N	
X.21 EIA-547 DCE (plenum cable)	(See Note 8)	1					76	6F8637	10	(33)	76F8637	35	(115)	U.S.A. Canada	N	
X.21 EIA-547 direct attache.	(See Note 8)	1	5845	10	(33)	5843	13	1F4838	10	(33)	11F4838	100	(328)	Y	N	
X.21 EIA-547 direct attache. (Plenum cable)	(See Note 8)	1					76	6F8638	10	(33)	76F8638	100	(328)	U.S.A. Canada	N	

Notes: See page 75.

Notes:

- 1. Direct connections (without any modem):
 - a. 3745/3746 to IBM 2210 Multiprotocol Router, IBM 2212 Access Utility, IBM 2216 Multiaccess Connector, or 3746 (Multiaccess Enclosure) The 3745 and 3746 must use a V.35 DCE cable. The IBM 2210, IBM 2212, IBM 2216, and Multiaccess Enclosure must use a V.35 direct attach cable (clocking must be provided by the 2210, 2212, 2216 or Multiaccess Enclosure).
 - b. 3745/3746 to 3745/3746, 3720, or 3725 connections:
 - If the 3745/3746 is defined as main (NCP generation parameters: direct clocking), it must use a V.35 or X.21 direct-attachment cable.
 - If the 3745/3746 is defined as tributary (NCP generation parameters: external clocking), it must use a V.35 or X.21 DCE cable. The total length of the two cables must not exceed 100m (328-ft) for V.35, or 10m (33-ft) for X.21.
- 2. In Europe, Middle East, Africa countries, the cable group delivered by default when using specific code 2999 with this feature is:

5831 (V.35 DCE) in Belgium, Denmark, Finland, Ireland, Italy, Netherlands, Norway, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland and Turkey.

5835 (X.21 Transfix) in France.

5833 (X.21 DCE) in other Europe, Middle East, Africa countries.

- The cable group numbers 5837 and 5839 are not available in Europe, Middle East, Africa countries. Order by the cable part number in Europe, Middle East, and Africa countries.
- 4. X.21 Transfix is available in France only. This cable must be used for those Transfix DCEs which do not support the "Control" and "Indicator" signaling over the X.21 interface.
- 5. This length is authorized with the special clocking option only (transmit clocking loop back to DCE). Without this option, the maximum cable length is 15 m (50-ft).
- 6. Token-ring cables for the 3745 are not interchangeable with token-ring cables for the 3746-900, due to differing connectors on the machine side.
- 7. For the 3745 Models 21A, 31A, 41A, and 61A, the FC is 4760 or 4770. For the 3745 Model 17A, the FC is 4771.
- 8. For the 3745 Models 21A, 31A, 41A, and 61A, the FC is 4740. For the 3745 Model 17A, the FC is 4741. Each 4740 or 4741 FC provides two ports. Only one port can be active at a time.
- 9. To attach an IBM 6629, a short cable having a maximum length of 5 meters (16-ft) must be ordered.

Token-Ring (TIC3) and High-Speed Line (LIC12) Attachment Cables (3746-9x0)

Feature			According to Your Requirements, Order:									
		Maximum										
FC Token—Ring		Type	Number of	Fixed—Length Cable		Short (abl	le	Long	g Cable	Ų.S.A.	
Attachment			Cables per Feature	CG	Length m (ft)	Pa CG or No	rt	Maximum	Part Number	Maximum Length	CAN LA AP	E/ME/A
a	b	С	a	ď	m (ft) e	f f	' ·	Length m g (ft)	h	m i (ft)	j	k k
Token—ring attachment	5601	NA	1		21.3(70) Note 6)	7004 72F12	236	21.3(70)	72F1236	44.2(145)	Y	N
Token—ring attachment (Plenum cable)	5601	NA	1		21.3(70) Note 6)	7006 72F12	42	21.3(70)	72F1242	44.2(145)	U.S.A. Canada	N
Token-ring attachment	5601	NA	1	7003 (See	9 (30) Note 6)	7004 72F12	36	9.0(30)	72F1236	44.2(145)	N	Y
V.35 DCE (See Notes 1 and 2)	5212	12	1	5831	10 (33)	5830 58X93	344	10 (33)	58X9344	35 (115) (See Note 5)	Y	Y
V.35 DCE (See Note 1) (Plenum cable)	5212	12	1	7007	10 (33)	7008 76F86	33	10 (33)	76F8633	35 (115) (See Note 5)	U.S.A. Canada	N
X.21 DCE (See Notes 1 and 2)	5212	12	1	5833	10 (33)	5832 58X93	345	10 (33)			Y	Y
X.21 DCE (See Note 1) (Plenum cable)	5212	12	1	7009	10 (33)	7010 76F86	34	10 (33)			U.S.A. Canada	N
V.35 direct attachment (See Note 1)	5212	12	1	5837 (See	10 (33) Note 3)	5836 58X93	47	10 (33)	58X9347	100 (328)	Y	Y
V.35 direct attachment (See Note 1) (Plenum cable)	5212	12	1	7011	10 (33)	7012 76F86	35	10 (33)	76F8635	100 (328)	U.S.A. Canada	N
X.21 direct attachment (See Note 1)	5212	12	1	5839 (See	10 (33) Note 3)	5838 58X93	48	10 (33)			Y	Y
X.21 direct attachment (See Note 1) (Plenum cable)	5212	12	1	7013	10 (33)	7014 76F86	36	10 (33)	76F8636	10 (33)	U.S.A. Canada	N
X.21 Transfix (See Notes 2 and 4)	5212	12	1	5835	10 (33)	5834 58X93	46	10 (33)			N	Y
X.21 EIA-547 DCE	5212	12	1	5844	10 (33)	5842 11F48	37	10 (33)	11F4837	35 (115)	Y	N
X.21 EIA-547 DCE (Plenum cable)	5212	12	1	7015	10 (33)	7016 76F86	37	10 (33)	76F8637	35 (115)	U.S.A. Canada	
X.21 EIA-547 direct attachment	5212	12	1	5845	10 (33)	5843 11F48	38	10 (33)	11F4838	100 (328)	Y	
X.21 EIA-547 direct attachment (Plenum cable)	5212	12	1	7017	10 (33)	7018 76F86	38	10 (33)	76F8638	100 (328)	U.S.A. Canada	

Notes: See page 77.

Notes:

- 1. Direct connections (without any modem):
 - 3746 to IBM 2210 Multiprotocol Router, IBM 2212 Access Utility, IBM 2216 Multiaccess Connector, or 3746 (Multiaccess Enclosure)
 The 3746 must use a V.35 DCE cable and the IBM 2210, IBM 2212, IBM 2216, and Multiaccess Enclosure must use a V.35 direct attach cable (the 2210, 2212, 2216, or MAE must provide clocking to the 3746).
 - 3746 to a 3746 Model 900 or 950, or a 3745
 - The 3745/3746 defined as main (for direct clocking) must use a direct-attachment cable (V.35 or X.21).
 - The 3745/3746 defined as tributary (for external clocking), must use a DCE cable (V.35 or X.21).

The total length of the two cables must not exceed 100 m (328-ft) for V.35, or 10 m (33-ft) for X.21.

- 2. In Europe, Middle East, Africa countries, the cable group delivered by default when using specific code 2999 with this feature is:
 - 5831 (V.35 DCE) in Belgium, Denmark, Finland, Ireland, Italy, Netherlands, Norway, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland, and Turkey.
 - 5835 (X.21 Transfix) in France.
 - 5833 (X.21 DCE) in other Europe, Middle East, Africa countries.

To attach an IBM 6629, a short cable having a maximum length of 5 meters (16-ft) must be ordered

- 3. The cable group numbers 5837 and 5839 are not available in Europe, Middle East, Africa countries. Order the cable by part number in these countries.
- 4. X.21 Transfix is available in France only. This cable must be used for those Transfix DCEs which do not support the "Control" and "Indicator" signaling over the X.21 interface.
- 5. This length is authorized with the special clocking option only (transmit clocking loop back to DCE). Without this option, the maximum cable length is 15m (50-ft).
- 6. Token-ring cables for a 3745 are not interchangeable with token-ring cables for the 3746, due to differing connectors on the machine side.

Line Interface Attachment (LIC) Cables (3745, 3746-L13/L15) (Part 1 of 3)

Feature				Acco	rding to	Your F	Requirer	ments,	Order:			Count	try	
			Maximum Number	Five	d-Length		Custo	om–Len	gth Cable					
			of Cables	Cabl			Short (Cab1e		Long	g Cable	USA		
LIC a	FC b	LIC Type c	per Feature a	CG d	Length m (ft) e	CG		Part Number	Maximum Length m g (ft)	Part Number h	Maximum Length m i (ft)	LA AP	E/ME/A k	Frqme
V.24 DCE (Japan NTT) (See Notes 1, and 2)	4911	1	4			1621	63	398662	13.5 (45)	6398782	100 (328)	Japar	n N	BF 13 14 15
V.24 DCE X.21 bis oper. (Japan NTT) (See Note 2)	4911	1	4			8153	63	1F4505	13.5 (45)	61F4507	100 (328)			
V.25 auto call (Japan NTT) (See Note 2)	4911	1	4			1634	63	398664	13.5 (45)	6398786	35 (115)			
V.25 auto call (Caducee France)	4911	1	4			1622	63	398667	13.5 (45)	6398783	35 (115)	N	Y	
V.25 RS-366 auto call (UK)	4911	1	4			1635	63	398670	13.5 (45)	6398787	35 (115)			
V.35 DCE (French PTT modem) (See Notes 3 and 5)	4931	3	1	1619	13.5 (45)	1619	63	398671	13.5 (45)	6398789	100 (328)			
V.24 DCE (Belgium) (See Notes 1 and 4)	4911	1	4	1620	13.5 (45)	1620	63	398672	13.5 (45)	6398780	100 (328)			
X.21 DCE Transfix (France) (See Note 6)	4942	4B	1	1609	13.5 (45)	1609	58	8X9488	13.5 (45)	6398661	122 (400)			
V.35 direct attachment (France) (See Note 7)	4931	3	1			1623	6	5X9900	13.5 (45)	65X9900	122 (400)			

Notes: See page 79.

Notes:

- 1. This cable does not support X.21 bis operation.
- 2. Cable for:
 - Nippon Telegraph and Telephone (NTT) modem
 - Japanese original equipment manufacturer (OEM) modem
- 3. Includes the adapter, part number 1749352.
- 4. This cable can be used in conjunction with an ARC/3745 V.24 DCE assembly, feature number 648x (see pages 84 and 85). However, to be in compliance with the European Telecommunication standard NET2, it is recommended to use the ARC/3745 V.24 DCE in conjunction with a custom-length long cable having a maximum length of 13.5 m (45-ft).
- 5. This cable can be used in conjunction with an ARC/3745 V.35 DCE assembly feature number 658x (see pages 84 and 85). However, to be in compliance with the European Telecommunication standard NET2, it is recommended to use the ARC/3745 V.35 DCE in conjunction with a custom-length short cable having a maximum length of 13.5 m (45-ft).
- 6. This cable must be used for those Transfix DCEs which do not support the "Control" and "Indicator" signaling over the X.21 interface. This cable can be used in conjunction with an ARC/3745 X.21 DCE assembly feature number 662x (see pages 84 and 85). However, to be in compliance with the European Telecommunication standard NET2, it is recommended to use the ARC/3745 X.21 DCE in conjunction with a custom-length short cable having a maximum length of 13.5 m (45-ft).
- 7. This cable can be used in conjunction with the ARC/3745 V.35 DTE, FC 6580 (see pages 84 and 85).

Line Interface Attachment (LIC) Cables (3745, 3746-L13/L15) (Part 2 of 3)

Feature				Acco	rding to	Your Re	quirement	s, Order:			Country	y	
				F			Custom-L	ength Cab	le				
			Maximum Number	Cabl	d—Length e	s	hort Cabl	e	Long	g Cable			
LIC a	FC b	LIC Type c	of Cables per Feature a	CG d	Length m (ft) e	CG or	Part Number f	Maximum Length m (ft)	Part Number h	Maximum Length m (ft)	U.S.A. CAN LA AP j	E/ME/A k	Frame
V.25 RS-366 auto call	4911	1	4	1616	13.5 (45)	1610	6398668	13.5 (45)	6398788	35 (115)	Y	Y	BF 13
V.25 RS-366 auto call (Plenum cable)	4911	1	4		13.5 (45)		76F8614	13.5 (45)	76F8615	35 (115)	U.S.A. Canada	N	15
V.24 RS-232-C direct attachment (See Note 1)	4911	1	4	1607	13.5 (45)	1612	7837397	13.5 (45)	7837398	122 (400)	Y	Y	
V.24 RS-232-C direct attach. (See Note 1) (Plenum cable)	4911	1	4		13.5 (45)		76F8616	13.5 (45)	76F8617	122 (400)	U.S.A. Canada	N	
V.35 DCE (See Notes 2 and 10)	4931	3	1	1613	13.5 (45)	1618	58X9485	13.5 (45)	6398665	100 (328)	Y	Y	
V.35 DCE (Plenum cable) (See Note 10)	4931	3	1		13.5 (45)		76F8618	13.5 (45)	76F8619	100 (328)	U.S.A. Canada	N	
V.35 direct attachment (See Note 11)	4931	3	1	1605	13.5 (45)	1623	58X9484	13.5 (45)	6398657	122 (400)	Y	Y	
V.35 direct attachment (Plenum cable) (See Note 11)	4931	3	1		13.5 (45)		76F8620	13.5 (45)	76F8621	122 (400)	U.S.A. Canada	N	
X.21 DCE (See Notes 3 and 13)	4941 4942	4A* 4B	4 1	1606	13.5 (45)	1624	58X9487	13.5 (45)	6398658	122 (400)	Y	Y	
X.21 DCE (Plenum cable) (See Note 13)	4941 4942	4A* 4B	4		13.5 (45)		76F8622	13.5 (45)	76F8623	122 (400)	U.S.A. Canada	N	

 $[\]star$ The LIC4A is no longer manufactured.

Notes: See page 82.

Line Interface Attachment (LIC) Cables (3745, 3746-L13/L15) (Part 3 of 3)

Feature				Acco	rding to	You	ır Re	equirement	s, Order:			Country	y	
				F				Custom-L	ength Cab	1e				
			Maximum Number	Cable	d—Length e		Short Cable			Lon	g Cable			
LIC a	FC b	LIC Type c	of Cables per Feature a	CG d	Length m (ft) CG	i or	Part r Number f	Maximum Length m (ft)	Part Number h	Maximum Length m (ft)	U.S.A. CAN LA AP j	E/ME/A k	Frame
X.21 direct attachment (See Note 14)	4941 4942	4A* 4B	4	1608	30 (100		25	58X9486	30 (100)	6398660	122 (400)	Y	Y	BF 13
X.21 direct attachment (Plenum cable) (See Note 14)	4941 4942	4A* 4B	4 1		30 (100)		76F8624	30 (100)	76F8625	122 (400)	U.S.A. Canada	N	14
V.24 RS-232-C direct attach. (See Notes 4 and 12)	4911	1	4	1611	13.5 (45		527	7837395	13.5 (45)	7837396	122 (400)	Y	Y	
V.24 RS-232-C direct attach. (See Notes 4 and 12) (Plenum cable)	4911	1	4		13.5 (45)		76F8626	13.5 (45)	76F8627		U.S.A. Canada	N	
V.24 RS-232-C DCE (See Notes 5, 6, and 9)	4911	1	4	1604	13.5 (45		28	6398643	13.5 (45)	6398785	100 (328)	Y	Y	
V.24 RS-232-C DCE (See Notes 6 and 9) (Plenum cable)	4911	1	4		13.5 (45)		76F8628	13.5 (45)	76F8629		U.S.A. Canada	N	
V.24 RS-232-C DCE X.21 bis operation (See Notes 7 and 9)	4911	1	4	8154	13.5 (45		.52	61F4504	13.5 (45)	61F4506	100 (328)	Y	Y	
V.24 RS-232-C DCE X.21 bis operation (See Note 9) (Plenum cable)	4911	1	4		13.5 (45)		76F8630	13.5 (45)	76F8631		U.S.A. Canada	N	
Telecommuni- cation cord (See Note 8)	7865 7825	5* 6*	2		15 (50)						Y	Y	

 $[\]star$ The LIC4A, LIC5, and LIC6 are no longer manufactured.

Notes: See page 82.

Notes:

- 1. Direct attachment for the IBM 3101 Display Terminal and the asynchronous data terminal equipments (DTE).
- 2. Cable for LIC3 except for the French Post Telephone and Telegraph (PTT)
- 3. Cable for LIC4 except for Transfix DCEs requiring "C" to be wrapped on "I" in the cable.
- 4. Direct attachment for synchronous DTE.
- Cable for LIC1 except for Belgium and for Nippon Telegraph and Telephone (NTT) modem.
- 6. This cable does not support X.21 bis operation.
- 7. Cable for LIC1 except for Nippon Telegraph and Telephone (NTT) modem.
- 8. LIC types 5 and 6 are no longer manufactured.
- 9. This cable can be used in conjunction with an ARC/3745 V.24 DCE assembly feature 648x (see pages 84 and 85). However, to be in compliance with the European Telecommunication standard NET2, it is recommended to use the ARC/3745 V.24 DCE in conjunction with a custom-length long cable type having a maximum length of 13.5 m (45-ft).
- 10. This cable can be used in conjunction with an ARC/3745 V.35 DCE assembly feature 658x (see pages 84 and 85). However, to be in compliance with the European Telecommunication standard NET2, it is recommended to use the ARC/3745 V.35 DCE in conjunction with a custom-length long cable having a maximum length of 13.5 m (45-ft).
- 11. This cable can be used in conjunction with the ARC/3745 V.35 DTE assembly feature 6580 (see pages 84 and 85).
- 12. This cable can be used in conjunction with the ARC/3745 V.24 DTE assembly feature 6480 (see pages 84 and 85).
- 13. This cable must not be used for those Transfix DCEs which do not support the "Control" and "Indicator" signaling over the X.21 interface. This cable can be used in conjunction with an ARC/3745 X.21 DCE assembly feature 662x (see pages 84 and 85). However, to be in compliance with the European Telecommunication standard NET2, it is recommended to use the ARC/3745 X.21 DCE in conjunction with a custom-length long cable having a maximum length of 13.5 m (45-ft).
- 14. This cable can be used in conjunction with the ARC/3745 X.21 DTE assembly feature 6620 (see pages 84 and 85).

ISDN Attachment (LIC16) Cables (3746-900)

Note: The LIC16 is no longer manufactured.

Low- and Medium-Speed Line Attachment (LIC11) Cables (3746-9x0)

This cable connects the LIC11 to the line connection box base (LCBB). Refer to the figure on page 33. The LIC11 cable is provided with a predefined fixed-length and must be ordered with the LIC11 feature (see column <**d**> below for LIC11 cable ordering codes).

Feature			Maximum	According	g to Your Re	quirements, Order:	Count	ry
			Number of Cables	Fixed-Le	ngth Cable		U.S.A.	
LIC11 a	FC b	LIC Type c	per Feature a	d	Length m (ft) e	Part Number (Note 3)	CAN LA AP j	E/ME/A
	5210	11	1	9913 (Note 1)	1.3 (4)	58G5601	Y	Y
(plenum cable) (Note 6)	5210	11	1	9715 (Note 5)	5.5 (18) (Note 4)	17G5915	U.S.A. Canada	N
(Note 6)	5210	11	1	9714 (Note 5)	5.5 (18) (Note 4)	58G5602	Y	Y
(plenum cable)	5210	11	1	9717 (Note 5)	13.5 (45) (Note 4)	17G5916	U.S.A. Canada	N
	5210	11	1	9716 (Note 5)	13.5 (45) (Note 4)	58G5603	Y	Y
(plenum cable)	5210	11	1	5219 (Note 2)	33.5 (110) (Note 4)	17G5917	U.S.A. Canada	N
	5210	11	1	5218 (Note 2)	33.5 (110) (Note 4)	58G5604	Y	Y
(plenum cable) (Note 6)	5210	11	1	5221 (Note 5)	68.5 (226) (Note 4)	17G5918	U.S.A. Canada	N
(Note 6)	5210	11	1	5220 (Note 2)	68.5 (226) (Note 4)	58G5605	Y	Y
(plenum cable) (Note 6)	5210	11	1	5223 (Note 5)	103.5(341) (Note 4)	17G5919	U.S.A. Canada	N
	5210	11	1	5522 (Note 2)	103.5(341) (Note 4)	58G5606	Y	Y

Notes:

- 1. This code is a specific code for the 3746 machine or 3746 upgrade order. This cable connects a LIC11 to a LCBB installed in the 3746.
- 2. This code is an feature code for the 3746 machine or 3746 upgrade order.
- 3. Part number for LIC11 cables are provided for information only. The codes listed in Col <**d**> must be used to order LIC11 cables with the 3746 machine or 3746 upgrade.
- 4. The actual cable length is the table value plus 1.5 m (5-ft). See "How to Determine Cable Length" on page 62.
- 5. This code is a specific code for the 3746 machine or 3746 upgrade order.
- 6. No longer manufactured.

Active Remote Connector (ARC) Assemblies (3746-9x0)

The ARC assembly connects the modem or terminal (direct attachment) to the line connection box (LCB). There are two types of ARC assemblies:

ARC assembly A

The cable is part of the ARC component and cannot be separated from the ARC card. This type of ARC is no longer available from IBM.

ARC assembly B

The cable is separate from the ARC and is included in the ARC assembly. The cable length and connector type are determined by the ordered ARC feature code.

The ARC assemblies are optional features and must be ordered with the 3746 machine or 3746 upgrade.

Note: An ARC cable connects to one of the following:

DCE A modem attachment DTE A direct attachment

ARC Assemblies A

The information in Table 17 is included for reference only as the ARCs in this category are no longer available from IBM.

Table 17. A	RC Assemblie	s A					
ARC Assembly	Connected To	ARC Name (Feature Code)	Length m (ft) (See Note 1)	ARC Assembly	Connected To	ARC Name (Feature Code)	Length m (ft) (See Note 1)
ARC V.24 (See note 2)	DTE	ARC1B (6400)	15 (50)	ARC/3745 V.24 (See note 3)	DTE	ARC1D (6480)	5 (17)
ARC V.24 (See notes 2 and 6)	DCE	ARC1A1 (6405) ARC1A2 (6415)	5 (17) 12 (40)	ARC/3745 V.24 (See note 3)	DCE	ARC1C (6485)	5 (17)
ARC V.35 (See notes 2 and 5)	DTE	ARC3B (6500)	15 (50)	ARC/3745 V.35 (See note 3)	DTE	ARC3D (6580)	5 (17)
ARC V.35 (See notes 2 and 4)	DCE	ARC3A1 (6505) ARC3A2 (6515)	5 (17) 15 (50)	ARC/3745 V.35 (See note 3)	DCE	ARC3C (6585)	5 (17)
ARC X.21 (See note 2)	DCE	ARC4A1 (6605) ARC4A2 (6615)	5 (17) 15 (50)	ARC/3745 X.21 (See note 3)	DCE	ARC4C (6625)	5 (17)
ARC X.21 Transfix (See note 7)	DCE	ARC4A3 (6630) ARC4A4 (6635)	5 (17) 15 (50)	ARC/3745 X.21 (See note 3)	DTE	ARC4D (6620)	5 (17)
ARC X.21 (See note 2)	DTE	ARC4B (6600)	15 (50)				
note: The	notes for this t	able are found	i on page 89.				

ARC Assemblies B

These ARC assemblies consist of an ARC card and a cable which can be separate from the ARC. The possible cable lengths depend on the type of connection. Table 18 shows the feature code for each combination of ARC card type, connection mode, and cable length. The ARC assemblies must be ordered with the 3746 machine or 3746 upgrade.

Each part of Table 18 corresponds to a category of interface and lists all the available lengths up to the maximum allowed for this category.

Table 18 (Page	1 of 2). ARC Ass	emblies B and The	eir Cables	
ARC Card Type	Connected To	ARC Name (at MOSS-E)	ARC Cable Length m (ft) (See note 1)	Feature Code
V.24 V.24 V.24 V.24 V.24 V.24 V.24	DCE DCE DCE DCE DCE DCE	ARC1B0	0.6 (2) d 6) 1.2 (4) 2.4 (8) 5 (17) 10 (33) 12 (40) 15 (50)	6406* 6402 6404 6405 6410* 6415
V.24 V.24 V.24 V.24 V.24	3745 DCE cable 3745 DCE cable 3745 DCE cable 3745 DCE cable 3745 DTE cable	(See note 2) ARC1C0 (See notes 2 and ARC1D0	0.6 (2) d 3) 1.2 (4) 2.4 (8) 5 (17) 5 (17)	6486* 6482* 6484* 6485 6480*
V.35 V.35 V.35 V.35 V.35 V.35	DCE DCE DCE DCE DCE DCE	ARC3A0 (See notes 2 and	0.6 (2)	6506 6502 6504* 6505 6510* 6515
V.35 V.35 3745 DCE V.35 3745 DCE V.35 3745 DCE V.35 3745 DCE	DTE 3745 DCE cable 3745 DCE cable 3745 DCE cable 3745 DCE cable	ARC3B0 (See notes 2 and ARC3C0 (See notes 2 and	0.6 (2)	6500 6586* 6582* 6584* 6585
V.35 3745 DTE	3745 DTE cable	ARC3D0 (See notes 2 and	5 (17)	6580*

Table 18 (Page	2 of 2). ARC Asse	emblies B and Their	Cables	
ARC Card Type	Connected To	ARC Name (at MOSS-E)	ARC Cable Length m (ft) (See note 1)	Feature Code
X.21 X.21 X.21 X.21 X.21 X.21	DCE DCE DCE DCE DCE DCE	ARC4A0 (See note 2)	0.6 (2) 1.2 (4) 2.4 (8) 5 (17) 10 (33) 15 (50)	6606* 6602 6604 6605 6610* 6615
X.21	DTE	ARC4B0 (See note 2)	15 (50)	6600
X.21 X.21	DCE (Transfix) DCE (Transfix)	ARC4E0 (See note 7)	5 (17) 15 (50)	6630* 6635
X.21	3745 DTE cable	ARC4D0 (See notes 2 and 3	5 (17) 3)	6620*
X.21 X.21 X.21 X.21	3745 DCE cable 3745 DCE cable 3745 DCE cable 3745 DCE cable	ARC4C0 (See notes 2 and 3	0.6 (2) 3) 1.2 (4) 2.4 (7) 5 (17)	6626* 6622* 6624* 6625

Notes:

- 1. The notes for this table are on page 89.
- 2. Items marked with an asterisk (*) are no longer manufactured.

Cables for ARC Assemblies B

Additional cables, at different lengths, or with a different connector, can be ordered separately from the ARC assemblies B when the ARC card type does not need to be changed. These cables can be procured from IBM by their part numbers.

Table 19 (Page 1 o	f 2). Cables for ARC A	ssemblies B	
ARC Card Type	Connected To	Cable Length m (ft) (See note 1)	Cable Part Number
V.24 V.24 V.24 V.24 V.24 V.24	DCE DCE DCE DCE DCE DCE	0.6 (2) 1.2 (4) 2.4 (8) 5 (17) 10 (33) 12 (40)	58G5610 58G5611 58G5612 58G5613 58G5614 58G5615
V.24	DTE	15 (50)	58G5616
For these DCE cable V.24 V.24 V.24 V.24 V.24	s, see note 3. 3745 DCE cable	0.6 (2) 1.2 (4) 2.4 (8) 5 (17)	58G5640 58G5641 58G5642 58G5643
For this DTE cable, s V.24	ee note 3. 3745 DTE cable	5 (17)	58G5644

Table 19 (Page 2 of	f 2). Cables for ARC As	ssemblies B	
ARC Card Type	Connected To	Cable Length m (ft) (See note 1)	Cable Part Number
For these DCE cable		0.0.(0)	5005000
V.35 V.35	DCE DCE	0.6 (2) 1.2 (4)	58G5620 58G5621
V.35 V.35	DCE	2.4 (8)	58G5622
V.35	DCE	5 (17)	58G5623
V.35	DCE	10 (33)	58G5624
V.35	DCE	15 (SO)	58G5625
For this DTE cable, s			
V.35	DTE	15 (50)	58G5626
For these DCE cable			_
V.35 3745 DCE	3745 DCE cable	0.6 (2)	58G5645
V.35 3745 DCE	3745 DCE cable	1.2 (4)	58G5646
V.35 3745 DCE V.35 3745 DCE	3745 DCE cable 3745 DCE cable	2.4 (8)	58G5647
		5 (17)	58G5648
For this DTE cable, s V.35 3745 DTE		F (47)	5005040
	3745 DTE cable	5 (17)	58G5649
X.21	DCE	0.6 (2)	58G5630
X.21 X.21	DCE DCE	1.2 (4)	58G5631
X.21 X.21	DCE	2.4 (8) 5 (17)	58G5632 58G5633
X.21 X.21	DCE	10 (33)	58G5634
X.21 X.21	DCE	15 (50)	58G5635
X.21	DTE	15 (50)	58G5636
		15 (50)	3003030
For these DCE cable: X.21	s, see note 8. DCE (Transfix)	5 (17)	58G5637
X.21 X.21	DCE (Transfix)	15 (50)	58G5638
		10 (00)	3003000
For these DCE cable: X.21	s, see note 3. 3745 DCE cable	0.6 (2)	58G5650
X.21 X.21	3745 DCE cable	1.2 (4)	58G5651
X.21 X.21	3745 DCE cable	2.4 (8)	58G5652
X.21	3745 DCE cable	5 (17)	58G5653
For this DTE cable, s	ee note 3.		
X.21	3745 DTE cable	5 (17)	58G5654
Note: The notes for	this table are on page 8	39.	

Plenum and X.21 Bis Cables for ARC Assemblies A and B

For installations requiring plenum cables (U.S.A. and Canada: Table 20) or X.21 bis cables (Table 21), 3745 plenum or X.21 bis cables must be used with:

- ARC assemblies A that have a 3745-type connector
- ARC assembly B cables that have a 3745-type connector. Use the shortest ARC assembly B cable (refer to Table 18 on page 85) that will allow the 3745-type connector end to be easily accessible for connection to the 3745-type cable.

Figure 25 shows how a 3745 plenum or X.21 bis cable is used with an ARC assembly that has a 3745-type connector.

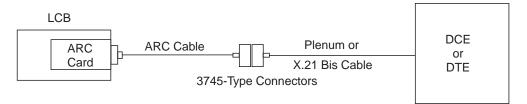


Figure 25. 3745 Plenum or X.21 bis Cable Connected to an ARC Assembly

Maximum Cable Length

The cables listed in Table 20 and Table 21 should not be longer than the maximum length indicated in the third column. This maximum length includes the ARC cable. The lengths are determined by the signal transmission properties of the cables.

Table 20. 3745 Plen	um Cables for ARC Ass	Table 20. 3745 Plenum Cables for ARC Assemblies								
3745 Plenum Cable Type	Connected To	Maximum Length m (ft)	3745 Part Number							
V.24 V.24 V.24 (X.21 bis) V.24 (X.21 bis)	DCE DCE DCE DCE	15 (49) 20 (65) 15 (49) 20 (65)	76F8628 76F8629 76F8630 76F8631							
V.24 V.24 V.35 V.35	DTE DCE DCE	15 (50) 20 (65) 15 (49) 20 (65)	76F8627 76F8618 76F8619							
V.35 V.35	DTE DTE	15 (50) 20 (65)	76F8620 76F8621							

Table 21. 3745 V.24/X	C.21 Bis Cables for AF	RC Assemblies	
3745 V.24/X.21 bis Cable Type	Connected To	Maximum Length m (ft)	3745 Part Number
Japan	DCE	15 (49)	61F4505
(NTT modem)	DCE	20 (65)	61F4507
All countries except Japan	DCE	15 (49)	76F4504
	DCE	20 (64)	76F4506

Notes:

1. Unlike the other cable tables, these are the actual cable lengths. For cables attached to ARCs inside the 3746 frame, do not forget to add 1.5m (5 ft.) to the length of the cable measured outside the frame.

For each category of ARC interface, (V.24 DCE for example,) the longest ARC cable specified in the table (12 meters in this example,) is the maximum supported length between the ARC card and the connection to the data communication equipment (DCE, DTE, or equivalent).

In the case of ARCs connected to the 3745-type cables, this maximum is 20 meters, including the length of the 3745-type cable.

Non-IBM ARC cables are not supported.

Other cabling alternatives, such as passive patch panels, should use the shortest ARC cable length possible, because of the intermediate cable being introduced between the patch panel and the DTE or DCE.

 Plenum cables are not available for the ARCs. If a plenum cable is to be used, order the equivalent ARC/3745 and the plenum cable corresponding to your need. Refer to "Plenum and X.21 Bis Cables for ARC Assemblies A and B" on page 88.

For example, if a plenum cable is to be used in the U.S. or Canada for an ARC V.24 DCE, do not order an ARC1A0. Instead order the following:

- An ARC V.24 for 3745 DCE cable (ARC1C0) from page 85
- One of the 3745 V.24 DCE plenum cables from page 88.
- 3. Connects to 3745 cables listed in "Plenum and X.21 Bis Cables for ARC Assemblies A and B" on page 88.
- 4. When connected to a French DCE, use a French DCE adapter between the cable and the DCE. This adapter is automatically shipped with the ARC.
- 5. When connected to a French DTE use a French DTE adapter between the cable and the DTE. This adapter is automatically shipped with the ARC.
- 6. For Japan, the wrap function on the cable connector is performed by using a wrap plug shipped with the machine.
- 7. For Transfix (France only). The ARCs named ARC4A3, ARC4A4, and ARC4E0 (X.21 DCE Transfix) provide internal wrapping of the "Control" (C) and "Indicate" (I) leads. They are primarily designed for those Transfix DCEs (France) that do not support the "I" and "C" signaling of the X.21 interface.
- 8. For Transfix (France only).
- No longer manufactured.

Multiaccess Enclosure Cables

The following adapter cables are available for use with the Multiaccess Enclosure

EIA-232E/V.24 Fanout Cable (FC 3701)

A schematic of the EIA-232E/V.24 Fanout Cable (FC 3701) is found in Figure 26 below:

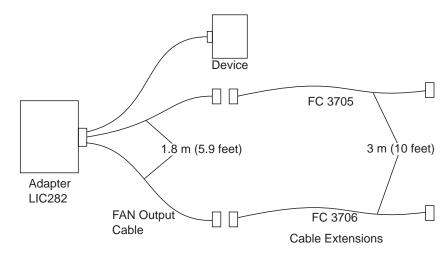


Figure 26. EIA-232 Fanout Schematic

This fanout cable provides eight connections (25-pin D-shell male,) each of which is 1.8 m (5.9-ft) in length. Each connection is suitable for connection to a EIA-232/V.24 modem.

Cables 3705 and 3706 are available to complement this cable. FC 3705 attaches to the FC 3701 and extends the cable length an additional 3 m (10-ft) for attachment to a modem. FC 3706 attaches to FC 3701 and provides clocking to allow devices to be directly attached to the Multiaccess Enclosure without having to use a modem. It is 3 m (10-ft) in length and provides a female 25-pin D-shell connector.

V.35 Fanout Cable (FC 3702)

A 1.2 m (4-ft) fanout cable to a distribution box containing six 25-pin D-shell male connections.

Cables 3707 and 3708 are available to complement this cable. FC 3707 provides a 3 m (10-ft) extension cable with a 34-pin male block connector for attachment to a modem. FC 3708 provides a 2 m (6.6-ft) cable with a 34-pin female block connector for direct-device attachment.

V.36 Fanout Cable (FC 3703)

This fanout cable provides six connections (37-pin D-shell male), each of which is 3 m (10-ft) in length. Each connection is suitable for connection to a V.36 modem.

Cables 3709 and 3710 are available to complement this cable. FC 3709 provides a 3 m (10-ft) extension cable with a 37-pin male D-shell connector for attachment to a modem. FC 3710 provides a 3 m (10-ft) cable with a 37-pin female D-shell connector for direct-device attachment.

X.21 Fanout Cable (FC 3704)

This fanout cable provides eight connections (15-pin D-shell male), each of which is 1.8 m (6-ft) long. Each connection is suitable for connection to an X.21 modem.

Cables 3711 and 3712 are available to complement this cable. FC 3711 provides a 3 m (10-ft) extension cable with a 15-pin D-shell male connector for attachment to a modem. FC 3712 provides a 3 m (10-ft) cable with a 15-pin D-shell female connector for direct-device attachment.

EIA-232E/V.24 Serial Interface Cable (FC 3705)

A 3 m (10-ft) extension cable with a 25-pin D-shell male connector for attachment to a modem.

EIA-232E/V.24 Direct Attach Cable (FC 3706)

A 3 m (10-ft) cable with a 25-pin D-shell female connector for direct-device attachment.

V.35 Serial Interface Cable (FC 3707)

A 3 m (10-ft) extension cable with a 34-pin male block connector for attachment to a modem.

V.35 Serial Interface Cable - France (FC 3799)

This feature provides two cables:

- A 3 m (10-ft) extension cable with a 34-pin male block connector for attachment to a modem, identical to FC 3707.
- A 30 cm (1-ft) cable that adapts the standard V.35 34-pin male block connector to the connector required for attachment to V.35 modems in France.

V.35 Direct Attach Cable (FC 3708)

A 2 m (6.6-ft) cable withd3 a 34-pin female block connector for direct-device attachment.

V.36 Serial Interface Cable (FC 3709)

A 3 m (10-ft) extension cable with a 37-pin male D-shell connector for attachment to a modem.

V.36 Direct Attach Cable (FC 3710)

A 3 m (10-ft) cable with a 37-pin female D-shell connector for direct-device attachment.

X.21 Serial Interface Cable (FC 3711)

A 3 m (10-ft) extension cable with a 15-pin D-shell male connector for attachment to a modem.

X.21 Direct Attach Cable (FC 3712)

A 3 m (10-ft) cable with a 15-pin D-shell female connector for direct-device attachment.

Multipurpose RJ-45 Cable (FC 3713)

A 7.6 m (25-ft) Category 5 cable with an RJ-45 connector for attachment to token-ring hubs or switches or Ethernet 10BASE-T hubs or switches.

RJ-48 T1 ISDN PRI/Channelized T1 Cable (FC 3714)

A 15 m (50-ft) cable with an RJ-48 connector for attachment to T1 ISDN PRI switches, or to a T1 interface.

E1 ISDN PRI/Channelized E1 Cable (FC 3715)

A 30 m (100-ft) cable with "flying leads" suitable for wiring to E1 ISDN PRI switches, or to a E1 interface.

RJ-48 J1 ISDN PRI/Channelized J1 Cable (FC 3716)

A 15 m (50-ft) cable with a RJ-48 connector for attachment to J1 ISDN PRI switches, or to a J1 interface.

RJ-48C ISDN PRI/Channelized T1 Cable (FC 3717)

A 15 m (50-ft) cable with an RJ-48C connector at each end for attachment to T1 ISDN PRI switches, or to T1 interfaces.

RJ-48C ISDN PRI/Channelized E1 Cable (FC 3718)

A 15 m (50-ft) cable with an RJ-48C connector to the adapter and "flying leads" for connecting to E1 ISDN PRI switches, or E1 interfaces.

Keyed RJ-48C ISDN PRI/Channelized J1 Cable (FC 3719)

A 15 m (50-ft) cable with an RJ-48C connection to the adapter and a keyed RJ-48C connection, compliant with ISO 10173, for attachment to J1 ISDN PRI switches, or to J1 interfaces.

Parallel Channel Bus-and-Tag Upstream Cable (FC 3720)

An upstream connection to other devices on a parallel channel bus and tag.

Parallel Channel Bus-and-Tag Downstream Cable (FC 3721)

An downstream connection to other devices on a parallel channel bus and tag.

ATM MMF External Cable (FC 5710)

A 10 m (33-ft) cable for attachment to ATM multi-mode fiber connections.

ATM MMF External Cable (FC 5715)

A 40 m (131-ft) cable for attachment to ATM multi-mode fiber connections.

ATM SMF External Cable (FC 5720)

A 10 m (33-ft) cable for attachment to ATM single-mode fiber connections.

ATM SMF External Cable (FC 5725)

A 40 m (131-ft) cable for attachment to ATM single-mode fiber connections.

ESCON Cable (Cable Group 3797)

This cable provides connection to the S/390 server with ESCON Channel.

Note: This cable is not a feature of the Multiaccess Enclosure and must be ordered separately. Refer to "ESCON Jumper Cables and Emergency Power-Off Cables (3746-9x0)" on page 68.

Other Cables

The following cables are not provided as options for the Multiaccess Enclosure and must be obtained by a separate cable order.

- Token-Ring STP Network Adapter cable
- Ethernet 10BASE2 cable
- HSSI DTE/DCE cable
- HSSI "null modem" cable
- RJ-48 cables for T1 (FC 3717), E1 (FC 3718), J1 (FC 3719).

Unshielded Twisted-Pair Cables for Token-Ring LAN Attachment (3746-9x0)

The token-ring MAUs may be attached to a TIC3 using unshielded twisted-pair cables with 100-ohm impedance.

The American National Standards Institute (ANSI), the Electronics Industries Association (EIA), and the Telecommunications Industry Association (TIA) have developed a standard for wiring commercial buildings for telecommunication. This standard provides guidance in the wiring of new commercial buildings and specifies crosstalk and attenuation characteristics up to 16 MHz. (For more information about this standard, see the *EIA/TIA Commercial Building Telecommunication Wiring Standard*, ANSI/EIA/TIA, July 1991.)

The cable and connector used to link a twisted-pair token-ring MAU module to a TIC3 are explained in the following sections:

- "Token-Ring UTP Media Filter"
- "Category 5 UTP Cable"
- "Twisted-Pair Wire Connectors."

Token-Ring UTP Media Filter

The Token-Ring UTP Media Filter (part number 43G3875) links a TIC3 to a 4 or 16 Mbps token-ring network using UTP cabling.

The filter provides the following functions:

- · Converts the connector on a TIC3 from DB9 to an 8-pin modular
- Matches impedance from 150 ohms to 100 ohms connector
- Reduces radio frequency emissions for FCC Class A compliance.

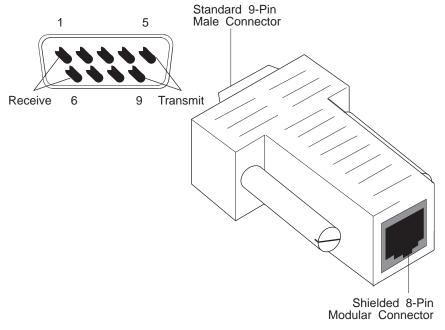


Figure 27. IBM Token-Ring UTP Media Filter (Part Number 43G3875)

Refer to Figure 28 on page 95 for the pin layout of the 8-pin modular connector. Connection of the token-ring UTP media filter to a token-ring MAU is via an attachment cable meeting the following specifications:

Cable type

100-ohm UTP meeting or exceeding the specifications for the category 5 cable (the cable may have an optional shield). The cable must contain four twisted pairs.

Termination

8-pin modular telephone plugs at each end (optional shielding) meeting or exceeding requirements for category 5 cable connections (refer to Figure 28 on page 95 for pin layout). If the cable and connector are shielded, the cable shield must terminate on the connector shield. Note that the connector pins must not be used to terminate a cable shield.

Length

Up to 100 m (330 ft.).

The UTP media filter is a component of the IBM 8250. Depending on the country, it must be ordered as either an accessory (part number 43G3875) or a feature of the 8250 (FC 3875).

Category 5 UTP Cable

Because cabling manufacturers have developed higher performance UTP cables, EIA/TIA has issued Additional Cable Specifications for Unshielded Twisted-Pair Cables (TSB-36) which define category 5 UTP cables. This category is intended for data transmission rates of up to 100 Mbps.

Twisted-Pair Wire Connectors

Attaching cables must use the 802.5 standard pin layout. Cables must be terminated with an 8-pin jack. Figure 28 illustrates the proper pin configuration for the cable from the rear.

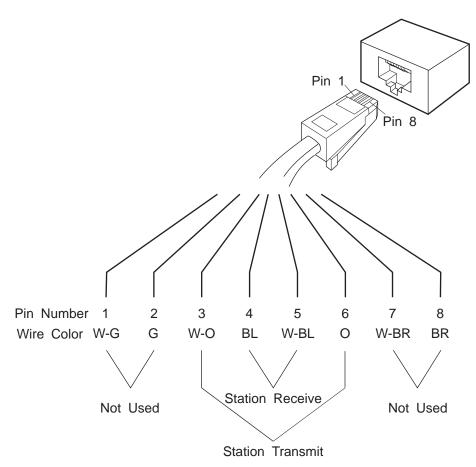


Figure 28. Twisted-Pair 8-Pin Connector

Note: This pin configuration is *not* the same as the pin configuration used for 10BASE-T Ethernet cables. If you attempt to connect stations to the hub via cables terminated with the 10BASE-T pin layout, the connection will not work properly.

Chapter 2. Familiarizing Yourself with the Installation Sheets

This chapter contains examples of the 3746-900 and 3746-950 installation sheets produced by the 3746 Configurator (CF3745). Explanations of terms and abbreviations are provided after the samples. Use your installation sheets to fill out the plugging sheets and cable labels.

Note: The 3745 Models 21A and 41A are no longer available from IBM.

Enclosure Examples

Notes for the 3746-900 and 950 Enclosure Examples

- For a LIC11, the B number on this line is the LCBB ID number. Refer to page 110.
- 2. For a LIC12, the number on this line is line group ID number. Refer to page 109.
- 3. The number in the lower line (8922, 8223, and so on) corresponds to the specific code that identifies the feature and the position.
- 4. The 07 number at the top and bottom of the figure is marked on the enclosure to help you identify it.

Legend

The following abbreviations are used in the enclosure examples.

Features:

CBSP = Controller Bus (CCU-A) and Service Processor

CBSP2 = Controller Bus (CCU-A) and Service Processor Type 2

CBSP3 = Controller Bus (CCU-A) and Service Processor Type 3

CBC = Controller Bus Coupler (CCU-B has TRP/TRP2 with CBC)

TRP = Token-Ring Processor

TRP2 = Token-Ring Processor Type 2

TRP3 = Token-Ring Processor Type 3

TIC3 = Token-Ring Interface Coupler Type 3

ESCP = Enterprise System Connection Processor

ESCP2 = Enterprise System Connection Processor Type 2

ESCP3 = Enterprise System Connection Processor Type 3

ESCC = Enterprise System Connection Coupler Type 1

ESCC2 = Enterprise System Connection Coupler Type 2

CLP = Communication Line Processor

CLP3 = Communication Line Processor Type 3

LIC11 = Line Interface Coupler Type 11

LIC12 = Line Interface Coupler Type 12

Status()

Base = Basic Feature

I = Installed (Active) Feature

S = Spare (Backup) Feature

F = Coupler slot free on a given processor

N = ESCON coupler slot not available

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1988, 1999

3746-900 Basic Enclosure Example

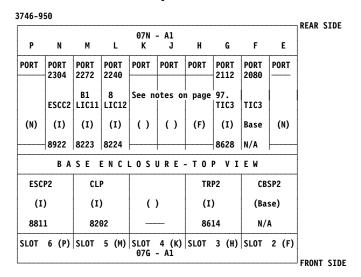
					•••					REAR SIDE
				07N			•	-	-	
P	N	М	L	K	J	Н	G	F	E	
PORT	PORT	PORT	PORT	PORT	PORT	PORT	PORT	PORT	PORT	
	2304	2272	2240				2112	2080	2048	
		B1	8	See n	 otes o	nage	97			
	ESCC2	LIC11	LIC12	Jec 11		uge	TIC3	TIC3	СВС	
(N)	(1)	(1)	(I)	()	()	(F)	(I)	Base	Base	
	8922	8223	8224	ļ 			8628	N/A	N/A	
	ВА	SE	E N C	L 0 S	URE	- T 0	PVI	E W		
ESC	P2	CLI	P			TR	P2	СВ	SP2	
(I)	(1))	()	(1)	(Ba	se)	
881	1	820	92			86	14	N/	A	
SLOT	6 (P)	SLOT	5 (M)	SLOT 07G	4 (K) - A1	SLOT	3 (H)	SL0T	2 (F)	

3746-900 Expansion Enclosure Example

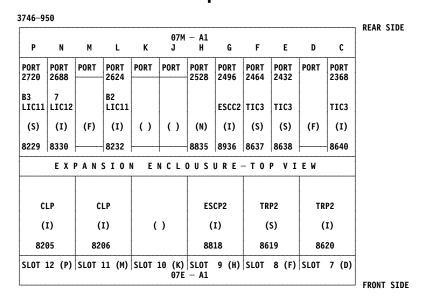
					07M	- A1						FRONT SI
P	N	М	L	K	J	Н	G	F	E	D	С	
PORT 2720	PORT 2688	PORT	PORT 2624	PORT	PORT	PORT 2528	PORT 2496	PORT 2464	PORT 2432	PORT	PORT 2368	
3 .IC11	7 LIC12		B2 LIC11				ESCC	TIC3	TIC3		TIC3	
(S)	(1)	(F)	(1)	()	()	(N)	(I)	(s)	(S)	(F)	(I)	
3229	8330		8232			8835	8936	8637	8638		8640	
	ΕX	PAN	S I 0	N E	N C L	0 S U	RE	T 0 P	- V I	E W		
CI	LP	С	LP			ES	СР	т	RP	Т	RP	
(1	I)	(I)	()	(I)	(S)	(I)	
820	95	82	96			88	08	86	09	86	10	
LAT	12 (P)	CLOT	11 (11)	CLOT	10 (1/)	CLOT	o (11)	CLOT	0 (5)	CLOT	7 (0)	ĺ

Note: The figure shows the first expansion enclosure. A second, optional expansion enclosure may be fitted and has the identifier 07L-A1. See note 4 on page 97 above.

3746-950 Basic Enclosure Example



3746-950 Expansion Enclosure Example



Note: The figure shows the first expansion enclosure. A second, optional expansion enclosure may be fitted and has the identifier 07L-A1. See note 4 on page 97 above.

3746-9X0 with Multiaccess Enclosure

Below you will find the installation sheets for a 3746-900 configuration including a Multiaccess Enclosure with four adapters: token ring, Fast-Ethernet, ATM, and ESCON.

This configuration corresponds to an environment with:

- Fast-Ethernet-to-ESCON (IP) traffic via the MAE
- TN3270 traffic (WAN) over the ATM adapter.

The upstream SNA traffic flows over the duel token-ring connection and, from the base enclosure, is routed by NCP8 as SNA subarea traffic over the ESCON adapter (ESCP3 and ESCC2).

These sheets have been slightly modified to make them more readable.

Installation Sheets

	3746-9									REAR	SIDE
P	N	М	L	07N - K	- A1 J	Н	G	F	E		
PORT	PORT 2304	PORT	PORT	PORT	PORT	PORT 2144	PORT 2112	PORT 2080	PORT 2048		
	ESCC2					TIC3	TIC3	TIC3	СВС		
()	(I)	()	()	()	()	(I)	(I)	Base	Base		
	8922					8627	8628	N/A	N/A		
	BASE	E E	N C L	0 S U	RE -	- T 0	Р 1	/ I E V	1		
ESC	СВЗ					ті	RP3	CE	SP3		
(1	[)	()	()	(:	I)	(Ba	ise)		
8581 ——			_		8784		N/A				
SL0T	6 (P)	SL0T	5 (M)	SLOT 07G -		SLOT	3 (H)	SL0T	2 (F)		

Figure 29. Base 3746-900 with Dual Token-Ring Connection to Multiaccess Enclosure

⁸ Running in the 3745.

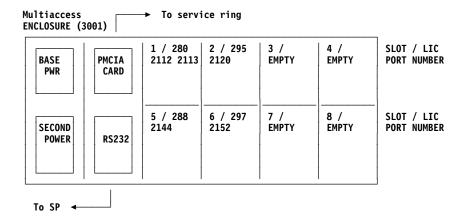


Figure 30. Multiaccess Enclosure with Dual Token-Ring Connections to the 3746-900 Base Frame

```
*** 3746-900/950 CABLE GROUP INFORMATION ***
CABLE
GROUP QTY DESCRIPTION
7003
        2 TOKEN-RING INTERFACE COUPLER TYPE 3 1
Features:
 CBSP3 = Controller Bus (CCU-A) and Service Processor Type 3
 TRP2 = Token-Ring Processor Type 2
 TIC3 = Token-Ring Interface Coupler Type 3
 ESCP3 = ESCON Processor Type 3
 ESCC3 = ESCON Coupler Type 3
Status():
Base = Basic Feature
  I = Installed (Active) Feature
  S = Spare (Backup) Feature
  F = Coupler slot free on a given processor
Legend for LIC Lines
                       LIC
Adapter Description
                       NAME
2-Port Token-Ring
                       LIC 280
1-Port Fast-Ethernet
                       LIC 288
1-Port ESCON Channel
                     LIC 287
```

POWER PLUG INFORMATION

1-Port Single-mode ATM LIC 295

3746-950 POWER PLUG IS: NON-LOCKING PLUG # NEMA 6-15P CUSTOMER MUST INSTALL: RECEPTACLE # NEMA 6-15R

Notes:

- 1. 1 The customer should insure that these are ordered with the correct length.
- 2. These sheets also provide valuable documentation for the customer and it is recommended that they be kept near the service processor.

Hardware Configuration Report

This hardware report corresponds to the installation sheets in Figure 29 on page 100 and Figure 30 on page 101.

3746-950	NWAYS MULTIPROTOCOL CTLR	1
FC		QTY
3001	MULTIACCESS ENCLOSURE (MAE)	1
3287 3288 3295 35000 3713 5002 5023 5033 5053 5423 5502 5523 5601 5623 5720 8614 8627 8628 9838 9838 9895	2-PORT TOKEN-RING ADAPTER 1-PORT ESCON CHANNEL ADAPTER 1-PORT FAST-ETHERNET ADAPTER 1-PORT SINGLE MODE ATM ADAPTER 2-PORT SINGLE MODE ATM ADAPTER 3-PORT SI	1 2 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 2 2 1 2 2 2 2
9023	CBSP TYPE 3	1

Notes:

- 1 One token ring adapter is necessary for SNA and APPN/HPR communication with the other enclosures of the 3746 Model 9x0.
- 2 This token-ring and the two TIC3s are required for SNA and APPN/HPR communication with the Multiaccess Enclosure.

Cable List Examples

Example of Cables for the 3745 (HSS and TRA)

Cable Group	Qty	Interface	Port No.
5831	1	HSS NIA Attach thru V.35	1028, 1029
5833	3	HSS NIA Attach thru X.21	1062, 1069, 1070
1666	4	Token-Ring Interface Coupler	1088, 1089, 1092, 1093

The meaning of the column headings are:

The meaning of the column headings are.									
Cable Group	Cable group number.								
Qty	Quantity of ordered cables in the same cable group.								
Interface	Type of attachment for the cables in the same cable group.								
Port No.	Numbers of the ports to which the cables of each cable group are connected.								

Example of the Cables for the 3745 (LIC Types 1 to 6)

Note: The LIC4A, LIC5, and LIC6 are no longer manufactured.

Cable Group	•	Interface	Port No.
1604 1605	22 5	LIC type 1 — external modem LIC type 3 — direct attach	•
<i>-</i> :	24 274	Coble Everente Toble	

Figure 31. 3745 Cable Example Table

The meaning of the column headings are:

Cable Group Cable group number.

Qty Quantity of ordered cables in the same cable group.

Interface Type of attachment for the cables in the same cable group.

Port No. Numbers of the ports to which the cables of each cable group are

connected.

Example of Cables for 3746-9x0 (LIC11)

FEATURE	QTY	DESCRIPTION	3746/NCP ADDRESSES
9716	4	LIC11 cable — 15m	2272,2240,2720,2624

The meaning of the column headings are:

Feature

Feature or specify code of the LIC cable.

QTY

Quantity of ordered LIC11 cables.

DESCRIPTION

Type of cable and its length.

3746/NCP ADDRESSES

Logical addresses of the ports to which the LIC11 cables are connected.

Example of Cables for 3736-9x0 (ARCs)

FEATU	RE QTY	DESCRIPTION	DISTRIBUTION ACROSS 3746/NCP ADDRESSES
6415	127	ARC V.24 — DCE attachment 12m	2432,2448,2496,2512,2528,2544,2560, 2576,2592,2608,2624,2640,2656,2672, 2688,2704,2720,2736
6500	30	ARC V.35 — DTE attachment 15m	2432,2448,2496,2512,2528,2544,2560, 2576,2592,2608,2624,2640,2656,2672, 2688,2704,2720,2736

The meaning of the column headings are:

FEATURE

Feature code of the ARC.

QTY

Quantity of ordered ARCs.

DESCRIPTION

Type of ARC and cable length.

DISTRIBUTION ACROSS 3746/NCP ADDRESSES

Port addresses to which the ARCs are connected.

Example of 3746 Cable Group Information

These cables, except the system EPO cables, are automatically shipped with the machine or upgrade in European, Middle East and African countries. For all other countries, these cables must be specifically ordered.

For all countries, EPO cables must be ordered if needed.

For available cable types and lengths, refer to "Cable Information" on page 64.

CABLE GROUP	QTY	DESCRIPTION
7003	4	TOKEN RING INTERFACE COUPLER TYPE 3
3797	2	ESCON COUPLER
1178	2	SYSTEM EPO
5833	2	LIC12

The meaning of the column headings are:

CABLE GROUP Cable group number of the cable(s). Quantity of cables of the same cable group. **DESCRIPTION** Type of cable.

Line Group Examples

Example of High-Speed Scanner Links

Device

ID	Group Name	No. Lines	Line Speed	Line Type	Attach	Back Up	Device				
4	High-Speed 1	1	256000	V35	NIA	N	3745				
5	High-Speed 2	2	1544000	X21	NIA	N	3745				
		The	e meanin	g of th	ne colum	n head	dings:				
		ID	n number (from 1 through 99) defined by the to HONE for a group of lines that are identical in								
		Gro	oup Nam	ne A	Any name the person inputting to HONE defined for this group.						
		No.	Lines	Т	The number of lines in this group.						
		Lin	e Speed		he spee ops).	d of all	I lines in this group. It is given in bits per second				
		Lin	е Туре	Т	he type	of ITU	-T interface used in this group.				
		Att	ach		NIA means network interface attachment. DA means direct attachment.						
		Bad	ck Up				group as backup (Y for yes) or normally active (N se of the machine.				

The device type on the other end of the link.

Example for Token Ring

ID	Group Name	LOGI. CONN.	Line Speed	TRA Type	Line CNTL	DUP	Transmit Set	Ring ID	TIC Number	CCU	ID	Back Up
21	CHOLLET	4	1600000	2		HDX	EBCDIC	1	1	А		N
		The meaning of the column headings:										
	The identification number (from 1 through 99) do inputting to HONE for a group of lines that are increspects.											
		Gre	oup Nam	ne Th	tion	time.						
		LO	GI. CON		e numl a toke	5 tok	cen-ring ada					
	Line Speed The speed is 4 or 16Mbps.											
TRA Type A token-ring adapter (TRA) type 1 provides two at token-ring networks operating at 4 Mbps. A TRA two attachment ports for token-ring networks oper Mbps.										RA	type 2 prov	
		Lin	ne CNTL	Th	e type	type of control used on the token-ring LAN.						
		DU	IP	Dι	ıplex (E	OX) o	r half-duple	x (HD)	<).			
	DUP Duplex (DX) or half-duplex (HDX). Transmit Set Transmission character set.											
Ring ID The identification number of the token-ring network person entering data in the CF3745.									twor	k defined by		
	•											
		CC	U ID	Th	e centi	ral co	ntrol unit (C	CCU).				
		Ва	ck Up	wł Y	nen the means	contr that t	roller is run	ning. up is a		-		s normally a

Example of Cross System Links and Line Group Information

ID	Group Name	No	Line	LIC	Protoc	ol '	Transmit	Line \	WT	Attach Ba	ck
		Lines	Speed	Туре	•		Set	Weight	4 LIC	S	Up
1	Line group 1	16	9600	1	SDLC	HDX	EBCDIC	3.1	2.8	Modem	N
2	Line group 2	5	56000	3	SDLC	FDX	EBCDIC	21.9	21.9	Direct	N
3	Line group 3	6	19200	1	SDLC	FDX	EBCDIC	12.5	10.0	Modem	N

Figure 32. Cross System Links and Line Group Table Example

The meaning of the column headings are:								
ID	The identification number (from 1 through 99) defined in the input to the CF3745 for a group of lines that are identical in all respects.							
Group Name	The name of the group used in the input to the CF3745.							
No. Lines	The number of lines in this group.							
Line Speed	The speed of all lines in this group. It is given in bits per second (bps).							
LIC Type	The type of LIC used in this group. The LIC type can be 1, 3, 4A, 4B, 5, or 6.							
	Note: The LIC4A, LIC5, and LIC6 are no longer manufactured.							
Protocol	The line control for this group. It can be S/S, BSC, or SDLC and FDX (duplex) or HDX (half duplex) transmission for this group.							
Transmit Set	The transmission code for this group. It can be EBCDIC or ASCII.							
Line Weight	The normal line weight for each individual line in this group.							
WT 4 LICs	The line weight for each individual line in this group (if the number of LICs being serviced by an individual low- or medium-speed scanner is less than or equal to 4).							
Attach	Modem or direct attachment of the lines attached to LIC type 1 to 4, or 4 wires for the telephone cable attached to LIC type 5 or 6.							
Back Up	 N means that the line group is not a backup and is normally active when the controller is running. Y means that the line group is a backup and is normally not active when the controller is running. 							

Example of 3746-900 Low/Medium Speed Line Group Information (LIC11)

ID	GP NAME	LOCATION	LINE SPEED	TRAFFIC	BACK UP	CLP BACK UP		ATTACH	INTERFACE	3745 ARC	ARC LENGTH
1	1	1	256000	NCP	N	N	1	DIRECT	V.35	N	15
2	2	1	128000	3746	N	N	1	MODEM	V.35	N	15
3	3	1	56000	NCP	N	N	90	MODEM	V.35	N	15
4	4	1	19200	3746	N	N	12	MODEM	V.24	N	12
5	5	1	9600	NCP	N	N	114	MODEM	V.24	N	12
6	6	1	4800	NCP	N	N	1	MODEM	V.24	N	12

Example of 3746-950 High Speed Line Group Information (LIC12)

ID	GP NAME	LOCATION	LINE SPEED		BACK UP			ATTACH	INTERFACE
7	2	2	1536000	3746	N	N	1	DIRECT	V-35
8	3	3	2048000	3746	N	N	2	MODEM	V-35

The meaning of the column headings are:							
ID	The identification number (from 1 through 99) defined by the person inputting to the CF3745 for a group of lines that are identical in all respects.						
GP NAME	Any name the person inputting to the CF3745 defined for this group.						
LOCATION	Represents the location where LCBs are installed (for the LIC12). This information has no effect on the 3746 configuration.						
LINE SPEED	The speed of all lines in this group. It is given in bits per second (bps).						
TRAFFIC	NCP = traffic controlled by an NCP (3746-900 only) 3746 = traffic controlled by the 3746 (equipped with a NNP)						
BACK UP	This defines the group as an inactive backup (Y for yes) or as normally active (N for no).						
CLP BACK UP	This defines the group as being backed up by another CLP (Y for yes) or as not being backed up (N for no).						
NO. LINES	The number of lines in this group.						
ATTACH	MODEM attachment (to DCE), MODEM attachment (to Transfix DCE), DIRECT attachment (to DTE).						
INTERFACE	Gives the interface type. Either V.24, V.35, or X.21.						
3745 ARC	Tells whether the lines of a group (DTE or DCE) are connected to the ARCs by LIC1, LIC3, LIC4A, or LIC4B cables.						
ARC LENGTH	Specifies the cable length of the ARC in meters.						
	the ARCs by LIC1, LIC3, LIC4A, or LIC4B cables.						

LCB and ARC Example

On this type of installation sheet, the upper row of slot position represents the LCB base (LCBB) and the lower row of slot position represents the LCB expansion (LCBE).

On your installation sheet, in the upper right corner, you will find the low 3746 or NCP address of the LIC11 attaching this LCB base (this not shown on the following diagram).

3746 Frame	Instal	1 ed								
Location: 1		LCBB	ID: B	1						
A.I.I	+0	+1	+2	+3	+4	+5	+6	+7	+8	+9
Address	2432	2433	2434	2435	2436	2437	2438	2439	2440	2441
ARC Type	V.35	V.35	V.35	V.35	V.35	V.35	V.24	V.24	V.24	
	DCE	DCE	DCE	DCE	DCE	DCE	DCE	DCE	DCE	
ARC length	15.0	15.0	15.0	15.0	15.0	15.0	12.0	12.0	12.0	
Speed	56K	56K	56K	56K	56K	56K	19.2K	9600	9600	
Line ID	3	3	3	3	3	3	4	5	5	•••••
		ĺ							1	
Status	(I)	(I)	(I)	(I)	(I)	(I)	(I)	(I)	(I)	
	+16	+17	+18	+19	+20	+21	+22	+23	+24	+25
Address	2448	2449	2450	2451	2452	2453	2454	2455	2456	2457
ARC Type	V.35				V.24	V.24	V.24	V.24	V.24	
	DCE	İ	ļ	<u> </u>	DCE	DCE	DCE	DCE	DCE	
ARC length	15.0	l		<u> </u>	12.0	12.0	12.0	12.0	12.0	
Speed	16.6K				9600	9600	9600	9600	9600	
Line ID	2				5	5	5	5	5	
Status	(I)	(F)	(F)	(F)	(I)	(1)	(I)	(I)	(I)	

Legend:

(I)=Installed (S)=Spare

(F)=Free slot

The meaning of the column headings are:

ADDRESS The addresses are either NCP addresses (for 3746-900 ports

controlled by NCP) or line addresses (for 3746-controlled ports).

ARC Type Gives the interface type (V.24, V.35, or X.21) and type of

attachment (DCE: modem attachment or DTE: direct attachment)

ARC Length Specifies the cable length of the ARC in meters.

Speed The speed of the line attached to the ARC.

Line ID The identification number (from 1 through 99) defined by the

person inputting to the CF3745 for a group of lines that are

identical in all respects.

Enclosure Physical Positions and Logical Addresses

Table 22 gives the relationship between the machine enclosure (physical) addresses and the 3746 or NCP line addresses.

Table 22. Physical Positions and Logical Addresses Relationship								
Processor Position (See note 1)	Coupler Position	Logical Line Address (See note 2)						
07G-A1-D	Reserved	Reserved						
07G-A1-F	07N-A1-E Reserved 07N-A1-F (TIC3)	Reserved 2080						
07G-A1-H (See note 3)	07N-A1-G 07N-A1-H	2112 to 2143 2144 to 2175						
07G-A1-K	07N-A1-J 07N-A1-K	2176 to 2207 2208 to 2239						
07G-A1-M	07N-A1-L 07N-A1-M	2240 to 2271 2272 to 2303						
07G-A1-P	07N-A1-N 07N-A1-P	2304 to 2335 2336 to 2367						
07E-A1-D	07M-A1-C 07M-A1-D	2368 to 2399 2400 to 2431						
07E-A1-F	07M-A1-E 07M-A1-F	2432 to 2463 2464 to 2495						
07E-A1-H	07M-A1-G 07M-A1-H	2496 to 2527 2528 to 2559						
07E-A1-K	07M-A1-J 07M-A1-K	2560 to 2591 2592 to 2623						
07E-A1-M	07M-A1-L 07M-A1-M	2624 to 2655 2656 to 2687						
07E-A1-P	07M-A1-N 07M-A1-P	2688 to 2719 2720 to 2751						

Note:

- 1. Starting with position 07G-A1-K, the processor slots can be assigned to a CLP, CLP3, TRP, TRP2, TRP3, ESCP, ESCP2, or ESCP3 processor.
- 2. A coupler slot for a LIC12, TIC3, ESCC or ESCC2 uses only the first address in the range of addresses assigned to the slot. The first address of a range is considered as the port address.
 - For the LIC11, only 30 addresses out of 32 assigned to a port are used. Refer to page 134.
- 3. In the 3746-900, when port 07N-A1-G is used for a CBC (to connect to CCU B), there is always a TRP, TRP2, or TRP3 in slot 07G-A1-H.

Table 23. Physical Positions and Logical Addresses Relationship, Second Expansion Enclosure **Processor Position Coupler Position Logical Line Address** (See note) (See note) 07D-A1-D 07L-A1-C 2752 to 2783 07L-A1-D 2784 to 2815 07D-A1-F 07L-A1-E 2816 to 2847 07L-A1-F 2848 to 2879 07D-A1-H 07L-A1-G 2880 to 2911 07L-A1-H 2912 to 2943 07D-A1-K 07L-A1-J 2944 to 2975 07L-A1-K 2976 to 3007 07D-A1-M 07L-A1-L 3008 to 3039 07L-A1-M 3040 to 3071 07D-A1-P 07L-A1-N 3072 to 3103 07L-A1-P 3104 to 3135

Note: A coupler slot for a LIC12, TIC3, ESCC or ESCC2 uses only the first address in the range of addresses assigned to the slot. The first address of a range is considered as the port address.

For the LIC11, only 30 addresses out of 32 assigned to a port are used. Refer to page

CLP Logical Addresses

START and **END** refer to first and last addresses in the range of logical addresses assigned to a CLP. The CLPs in this example are in slots H, K, and M of the expansion enclosure.

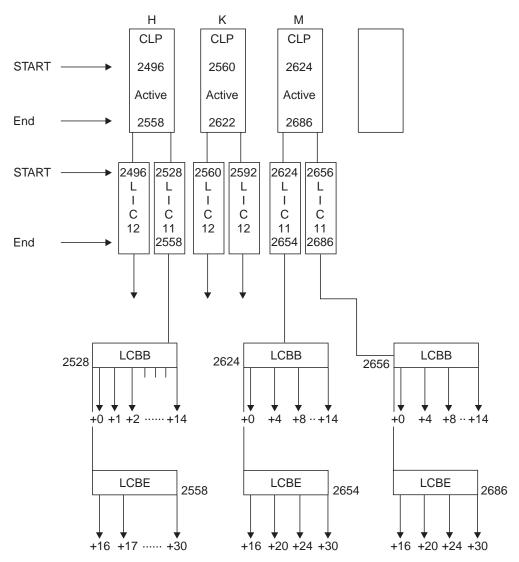


Figure 33. CLP Logical Addresses

Note: 120 addresses are available per CLP and all can be active simultaneously.

Unused addresses within an address range are allowed.

Examples of LIC Installation Sheets

- 1. The LIC4A, LIC5, and LIC6 are no longer manufactured.
- 2. The 3745 Models 21A and 41A are no longer manufactured.

Figure 34 is an example of an installation sheet for LIC types 1 to 6 in the 3745 Models 21A to 61A. Not all possible LIC types are shown. Refer to page 121 for the legend.

TYPE/MODEL: 3745-21A LINE UNIT (LIU1): 01P LINE RANGE: 0-63

DMUX2	AREA 3		WEIG	GHT SUM	27.8		,	AREA 4
B1	D1	E1	F1	G1	H1	J1	K1	L1
CABLE POS W	LIC TYPE 1	LIC TYPE 1	LIC TYPE 1	LIC TYPE 	LIC TYPE 	LIC TYPE 	LIC TYPE 	LIC TYPE
LSS 	ID/PORT 1/32 M	ID/PORT 1/36 M	1/40 M	ID/PORT	ID/PORT 	ID/PORT 	ID/PORT	ID/PORT
POS.Z LSS CABLE #5	1/33 M 1/34 M 1/35 M	1/37 M 1/38 M 1/39 M	1/41 M 	 	 	 	 	
"3	WEIGHT 11.1	WEIGHT 11.1	WEIGHT 5.6	WEIGHT 	WEIGHT 	WEIGHT 	WEIGHT 	WEIGHT
	STATUS (I)	STATUS (I)	STATUS (I)	STATUS (F)	STATUS (F)	STATUS (F)	STATUS (F)	STATUS (F)
POS.W LSS CABLE #2	LIC TYPE 1	LIC TYPE 1	LIC TYPE 1	LIC TYPE 3	LIC TYPE 3	LIC TYPE 3	LIC TYPE 3	LIC TYPE 3
POS.Z	ID/PORT 3/0 M 3/1 M	ID/PORT 3/4 M 3/5 M	ID/PORT 1/8 M 1/9 M	, .	ID/PORT 	ID/PORT 	ID/PORT 	ID/PORT
LSS CABLE #1	3/2 M 3/3 M	1/6 M 1/7 M	1/10 M 1/11 M		 2/16 D	 2/20 D	 2/24 D	 2/28 D
	WEIGHT 40.0	WEIGHT 25.6	WEIGHT 11.1	WEIGHT 21.9	WEIGHT 21.9	WEIGHT 21.9	WEIGHT 21.9	WEIGHT 21.9
	STATUS (I)	STATUS (I)	STATUS (I)	STATUS (I)	STATUS (I)	STATUS (I)	STATUS (I)	STATUS (I)
B1	D1	E1	F1	G1	H1	J1	K1	L1
DMUX1	AREA 1	WEIGH	HT SUM	98.6	WEIGHT	SUM 8	37.6 <i>i</i>	AREA 2

Figure 34. Installation Sheet for 3745 LIC Types 1 to 6

Figure 35 is an example of an installation sheet for a LIB type 1 containing LIC types 1 to 4 in the 3745 Model 17A. Not all possible LIC types are shown. Refer to page 121 for the legend.

Type/Model: 3745-17A LIB: M-A1 Line range: 32 - 63

DMUX2	AREA 3		WEI	GHT SUM	27.8			AREA 4
B1	C1	D1	E1	F1	G1	Н1	J1	K1
POS W LSS CABLE	LIC TYPE 1	LIC TYPE 1	LIC TYPE 1	LIC TYPE 	LIC TYPE 	LIC TYPE 	LIC TYPE 	LIC TYPE
POS.Z LSS CABLE #5	ID/PORT 1/32 M 1/33 M 1/34 M 1/35 M WEIGHT	1/37 M 1/38 M 1/39 M WEIGHT	1/40 M 1/41 M WEIGHT		ID/PORT WEIGHT	ID/PORT WEIGHT	 	
	STATUS (I) MES No.	STATUS (I) MES No.	5.6 STATUS (I) MES No.	STATUS (F) MES No.	STATUS (F) MES No.	 STATUS (F) MES No.	STATUS (F) MES No.	STATUS (F) MES No.

Figure 35. Installation Sheet for 3745 17A LIC Types 1 to 6

Note: LIB 2 (for LIC types 5 and 6) uses the same legend.

Frame Identification

Note: The 3745 Models 21A and 41A and 3746 Models L13, L14, and L15 are no longer available.

You may want to identify the installation for each 3745 or 3746 to be installed. Check whether an identification is already given at the beginning of your CF3745 report. If yes, add this identification on the top of each installation sheet. Otherwise, it is recommended that you add an identification. It is normally the physical unit name.

Figure 36 locates the LIC units (LIUs) for Models 21A to 61A identified on your installation sheets. There are no LIUs in the 3746-900.

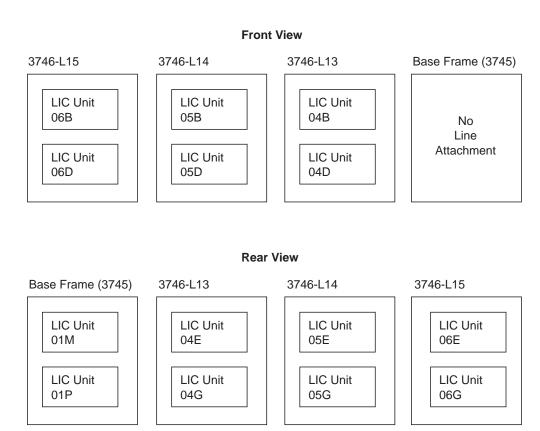


Figure 36. LIC Units (LIUs)

LIB Identification for Model 17A

Figure 37 locates the LIBs identified on your installation sheets. There are no LIBs in the 3745-900.

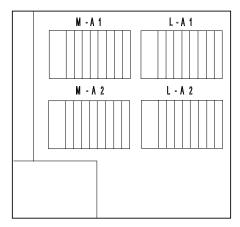


Figure 37. Models 17A LIBs

Notes:

- Boards M-A1 and M-A2 are type 1 LIBs and are equipped with LIC types 1 to 4.
- 2. Board L-A1 is a LIB type 24 and is equipped with LIC types 54 and 64.
- 3. Board L-A2 can be a LIB type 1 or a LIB type 24.
- 4. No longer available.

Example TSST Installation Sheet

Note: The 3745 Models 21A and 41A are no longer available.

Type/Model: 3745 - 21A Line range: 1028 - 1095 (W/TRA)

Controller name: PU 1

	TSST BOARD										
DIIC	POS.	. 1	POS	POS. 2		POS. 3		. 4			
GROUP	BUS TYPE: TRA		TYPE	:	TYPE	: HSS	TYPE	: ELA			
1	AD#1088 Port 1 TIC	AD#1089 Port 2 TIC	Reserv	Reserved		AD#1029 ID/Port 4/2		AD#1063 PORT 2 XPT			
BUS	POS.	. 5	POS	POS. 6 POS.		. 7	POS	. 8			
GROUP	TYPE	: TRA 2	TYPE	TYPE: TRA 2		: ELA	TYPE	: ELA			
2	AD#1092 Port 1 TIC	AD#1093 Port 2 TIC			AD#1068 PORT 1 XPT	AD#1069 PORT 2 LAN	AD#1070 PORT 1 LAN	AD#1071 PORT 2 XPT			

Figure 38. TSST Installation Sheet Example

Legend

TSST Board The TSST board supports token-ring adapters.

TSSB board does not support token-ring adapters.

Pos. n / TYPE The type of line adapter attached to the bus group in each scanner

position.

LSS For a low- or medium-speed scanner. The information

consists of the cable number, the frame that it is

servicing, and the area within that frame.

HSS For high-speed scanner.

TRA 1 For token-ring adapter type 1.

For token-ring adapter type 2. TRA 2

AD/Port

XTC TIC currently not in use
ELA For Ethernet LAN adapter
LAN For Ethernet LAN attached
XPT For port currently not in use
TIC For token-ring interface coupler
N/A Position not available

Desition for availa

- Position free

• Address of ports for HSSs (Configuration Without TRAs)

These are arranged by pairs:

Ports 1024 and 1025 Ports 1026 and 1027 Ports 1028 and 1029 Ports 1030 and 1031 Ports 1032 and 1033 Ports 1034 and 1035 Ports 1036 and 1037 Ports 1038 and 1039

Note: In each pair, two cables can be plugged but only one can be active at a time. Each cable corresponds to a high-speed line. The lines that correspond to both cables of a pair can be of different interface types and protocols.

Address of ports for HSSs (Configuration With TRAs)

These are arranged by pairs:

Ports 1028 and 1029 Ports 1030 and 1031 Ports 1036 and 1037 Ports 1038 and 1039

Note: Same note as above.

· Address of ports for TRAs

These are arranged by pairs:

Ports 1088 and 1089 Ports 1090 and 1091 Ports 1092 and 1093 Ports 1094 and 1095

Note: In each pair, two cables can be active at the same time. Each cable corresponds to a token-ring network.

· Address of ports for Ethernet adapters (configuration without TRA)

These are arranged by pairs:

Ports 1056 and 1057 Ports 1058 and 1059 Ports 1060 and 1061 Ports 1062 and 1063 Ports 1064 and 1065 Ports 1066 and 1067 Ports 1068 and 1069 Ports 1070 and 1071

Note: In each pair, two cables can be active at the same time. Each cable corresponds to a token-ring network.

· Address of ports for Ethernet adapters (configuration with TRAs)

These are arranged by pairs:

Ports 1060 and 1061 Ports 1062 and 1063 Ports 1068 and 1069 Ports 1070 and 1071

Note: In each pair, two cables can be active at the same time. Each cable corresponds to a token-ring network.

ID/Port

ID The identification number (from 1 through 99) defined in the input to the CF3745 for a group of lines that are identical in all respects.

Port Port number on HSS connector (J1 or J2) or TIC (J1 or J2).

Bus Group The bus group number is 1 or 2.

Legend for the Example Installation Sheets

Notes:

- 1. The LIC4A, LIC5, and LIC6 are no longer manufactured.
- 2. The 3745 Models 21A and 41A are no longer available.

The legend for the figures on pages 114 and 115 starts here and ends on page 125.

Type/Model: Defines the base frame or line expansion unit.

Line Unit Number that identifies the LIC unit containing the LICs in the

3745 Models 21A to 61A or 3746-Lx.

LIB Identifies the 3745-17A line interface board.

Line Range Defines the range of line addresses for the LIU or LIB.

DMUX Number Double multiplex circuits (DMUX) are used in LIC units type 1.

One DMUX is associated with up to eight LICs type 1 to 4 (up

to 32 ports).

SMUX Letter A single multiplex circuit (SMUX) is used in LIC units type 2.

One SMUX is associated with up to eight LIC types 5 or 6 (up

to 16 ports).

Area For Models 21A to 61A:

The LIC area numbers (shown at the top and bottom of the example in Figure 34 on page 114) are subdivisions of the LIC units in the base frame and line expansion units. The following diagrams show the physical arrangement of LIC areas.

In the 3745 base frame:

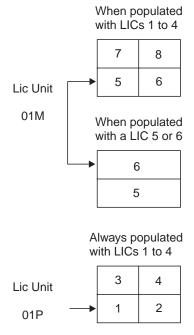


Figure 39. Physical Arrangement of LIC Areas — 3745 base frame

In the expansion units 3746-L13, 3746-L14, 3746-L15:

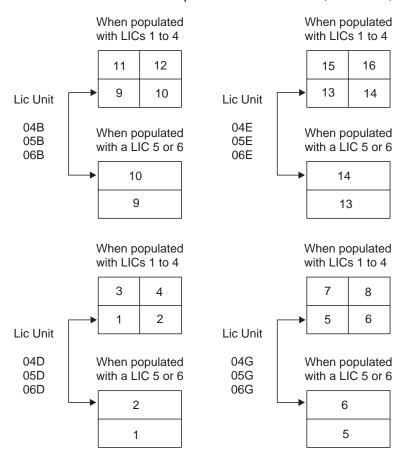


Figure 40. Physical Arrangement of LIC Areas — Expansion Units 3746—L13, —L14, —L15

Area For the Model 17A:

The LIC area numbers (shown at the top of Figure 35 on page 115) are subdivisions of the LIBs. The following table shows the arrangement of LIC areas:

LIB	LIB	Туре
LID	Area	Area
M—A1	1	L
PEAT	3	4
M-A2	1	l
I'ITAZ	1	2
L—A1	2	2
L—AI	7	7
L–A2	1,	,2
L-AZ	5	6

Figure 41. Arrangement of LIC Areas

Weight Sum

Weight summary (at the top and bottom of the installation sheets) per area. If two areas are serviced by the same scanner, the weight summary will appear overlapping the two areas. If one scanner services only one area, then the weight summary will appear only in the area serviced.

D0 to K0

These column headings are the physical locations of the LIB plugging positions.

D1 to K1

These column headings are physical locations of the LIC plugging positions in the LIC units (LIUs).

ID/Port

There are three types of information for the ID/Port:

- 1. **ID**: the identification number (from 1 through 99) defined in the input to the CF3745 for a group of lines that are identical in all respects.
- 2. **Port:** the port number. There are up to four ports per line interface coupler (LIC).

The port numbers of Models 21A to 61A are arranged in groups of:

 64 ports corresponding to the maximum number of ports in a LIU1 for LIC types 1 to 4:

Ports 0000 through 0063
Ports 0064 through 0127
Ports 0128 through 0191
Ports 0192 through 0255
Ports 0256 through 0319
Ports 0320 through 0383
Ports 0384 through 0447
Ports 0448 through 0511
Ports 0512 through 0575
Ports 0576 through 0639
Ports 0640 through 0703
Ports 0704 through 0767
Ports 0768 through 0831
Ports 0832 through 0895

• 32 ports corresponding to the maximum number of ports in a LIU2 for LIC types 5 and 6:

Ports 0064 through 0095
Ports 0128 through 0159
Ports 0192 through 0223
Ports 0256 through 0287
Ports 0320 through 0351
Ports 0384 through 0415
Ports 0448 through 0479
Ports 0512 through 0543
Ports 0576 through 0607
Ports 0640 through 0671
Ports 0704 through 0735
Ports 0768 through 0799
Ports 0832 through 0863

The port numbers of the Model 17A are arranged as follows:

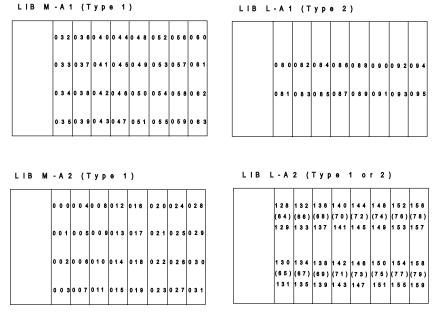


Figure 42. Port Numbers for Model 17A

Note: For LIB L-A2, if a:

- LIB type 1 is installed; the address range is 128 to 159
- LIB type 2 is installed; the address range is 64 to 79 (in parentheses)

3. Port status

(Blank) Backup line group

F No cable installed

D Direct-attached (LIC types 1, 3, 4A, and 4B) or digital data service (LIC6)

М Modem cable attached (LIC types 1, 3, 4A, and 4B)

L Limited distance modem (LIC6)

Α Auto-call (LIC1) or analog (LIC5)

Weight

Line weight for each LIC.

Status

- F Position free
- I Installed (factory-installed if the MES number is blank)
- **S** Spare LIC (installed)
- **N** Position not available for use. The position must be empty. According to LIC plugging rules, there is no LIC in the position on either side of a LIC6 running at a speed above 19 200 bits per second (bps).

Pos W, Pos Z

This is the cable plugging relationship of the scanner with DMUX or SMUX card (see LSS No. following).

LSS No.

One low- or medium-speed scanner (LSS) can be associated with either:

- 4 or 8 LICs in a LIC unit type 1
- 8 or 16 LICs in a LIC unit type 2.

If there is only one scanner number, this number applies to positions W and Z.

MES No. Miscellaneous equipment specification, if there is one.

Chapter 3. Plugging Sheets for 3745 and 3746

Blank plugging sheets for copying are provided starting on page 142.

Why Plugging Sheets and Cable Labels Are Required

In addition to the cables installed by IBM service personnel, you may have to manage up to several hundred cables. These may be for:

- Low-speed lines
- Medium-speed lines
- · High-speed lines
- · IBM token-ring networks
- Service processor and network node processor cables
- Emergency power-OFF (EPO) cables.

Other cables (for example, channel adapters and power cables) are not installed by the user and are not included in this chapter.

Even for a small configuration, it is very important to identify these cables. Use the plugging sheet examples included in this manual and cable labels to prepare cable identification:

 Plugging sheets summarize the cable situation. These sheets will be used at installation time and must be updated at each cabling change. The plugging sheet set is the map of your cabling situation.

The plugging sheets must be filled in before installation.

Update these sheets (and create new cable labels) when changing, removing, or adding cables during later modifications. They are necessary for problem determination, configuration modifications, and controller relocation.

Labels identify both ends of each cable (3746 side and destination side).

The labels are filled out by the service representative *at installation time* according to the information supplied by the customer on the plugging sheets.

Update or replace the labels during later cable or 3746 modifications. Refer to 134 and 133.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 1988, 1999

Preparing the Plugging Sheets for 3746 Low- and Medium-Speed Lines (LIC11)

Prepare your LIC11 plugging sheets:

1. With your LIC11 and LCB/ARC installation sheets.

For information about the installation sheets. Refer to Chapter 2, "Familiarizing Yourself with the Installation Sheets."

- 2. Using your LCB identifications (LCB number/location) and ARC identifications (Symbolic line name).
- 3. With the cable characteristics adapted to your installation. There are two types of cables:

LIC11 Connects the LIC11 to the LCBB. You need a LIC11 cable length and cable part number.

ARC Up to 30 ARCs connect the LCBB and LCBE to the DCEs/DTEs. You need an ARC type and cable length for each ARC.

Use the Chapter 1, "Physical Planning Details," pages 83 and 84.

- 4. With copies of the blank plugging sheet provided on page 142. See the example in Figure 43 on page 129.
- 5. If an IBM service representative is not doing the installation or change, prepare the cable labels according to "Preparing the LIC11, LCB, and ARC Cable Labels" on page 134.

3746 Con	troller Name:	CCI					
LIC Port: 2146 LIC Cable Length: 35 m LIC Cable Part Number: 58C5604							
Address Range: 2146 - 2206							
LCBB Nu	mber/Location	(Up to 25 Characters):	5/Room 2A				
ARC Position	Port	ARC Type	ARC Cable Length	Symbolic Line Name (Up to 8 Characters)	Comments		
+0	2146	V.24 DCE	m 0,6	Print Room			
+1	2147	V.35 DCE	1.2 ft	Spirda			

Legend:

3746 Controller Name

Your identification for the 3746 Network Node.

LIC Port

"3746/NCP" address of the LIC11 as it appears on the LIC11 installation sheet. Refer to page 103.

LIC Cable Length

The length of the LIC11 cable as it appears on the LIC11 installation sheet. Refer to page 103.

LIC Cable Part Number

The part number of the LIC11 cable. This information is optional.

Address Range

The 30 addresses available for this LIC port address.

Refer to page 111.

LCBB Number/Location

The user can label the LCB with up to 25 characters.

This label is then used to identify the LCB in the MOSS-E.

ARC Position

This is the slot location of the ARC in the LCBB or LCBE.

This information is supplied on the LCB installation sheet.

Refer to page 110.

Port

This is the logical address of the ARC and line.

It is found by adding the ARC position to the LIC11 port address.

This information is supplied on the LCB installation sheet.

Refer to page 110.

ARC Type

This information is supplied on the LCB installation sheet.

Refer to page 110 and to Chapter 1, "Physical Planning Details."

It is also on the label of the ARC card in the LCB.

ARC Cable Length

The length of the ARC cable. This information is supplied on the LCB installation sheet. Refer to page 110.

Symbolic Line Name

The user can label the ARC with up to 8 characters identifying the line destination.

This name can identify the ARC in the MOSS-E.

Figure 43. Example LIC11 Plugging Sheet

Preparing the Plugging Sheets for 3746 High-Speed Lines (LIC12)

Prepare your LIC12 plugging sheet:

- 1. With the port address of each LIC12, as given by your installation sheets. For information about the installation sheets. Refer to Chapter 2, "Familiarizing Yourself with the Installation Sheets."
- 2. With the names you use to identify the line destination.
- 3. With the cable characteristics adapted to your installation and chosen using Chapter 1, "Physical Planning Details," page 76. They are:

Cable group or cable part number Cable length.

- 4. With copies of the blank plugging sheet provided on page 143. See the example plugging sheet in Figure 44.
- 5. Prepare the cable labels as described on page 133.

3746 Cd	ontroller Name: <i>CC 1</i>			
LIC Port	Cable Group or Part Number	Cable Length	Line Destination	Comments
2176	CG 7007	10 m	Atlanta	Plenum cable

Legend:

3746 Controller Name

Your identification for the 3746 Network Node base frame.

LIC Port

Address of the LIC12 as it appears on the 3746 enclosure installation sheet(s). Refer to pages 97 to 99.

Cable Group or Part Number

This information is available on page 76.

Cable Length

The length of the LIC cable.

Line Destination

Your name for the destination of the LIC cable.

Figure 44. Example LIC12 Plugging Sheet

Preparing the Plugging Sheets for the 3746 Token-Ring Adapters

Prepare your token-ring adapter plugging sheets:

 With the port address of each token-ring coupler, as given by your installation sheets.

For information about the installation sheets, refer to Chapter 2, "Familiarizing Yourself with the Installation Sheets."

- 2. With the names you use to identify the token-ring LANs (the token-ring network destination).
- 3. With the cable characteristics adapted to your installation and chosen using Chapter 1, "Physical Planning Details," page 76. They are:

Cable group or cable part number Cable length.

If you are using unshielded twisted-pair (UTP) cable, refer to Chapter 1, "Physical Planning Details," page 93. IBM supplies the necessary token-ring media filter, but not the UTP cable and connectors.

- 4. With copies of the blank plugging sheet provided on page 144. See the example plugging sheet in Figure 45.
- 5. Prepare the cable labels as described on page 133.

3746 C	3746 Controller Name: <i>CC 1</i>									
TIC Port	Cable group or Part number	Cable Length	Token-Ring Network Destination	Comments						
2176	CG 7003	21.3 m	BLD. 7-6X							

Legend:

3746 Controller Name

Your identification for the 3746 Network Node frame.

TIC3 Port

Address of the TIC3 as it appears on the 3746 enclosure installation sheet(s), refer to pages 97 to 99.

Cable Group or Part Number

This information is available starting on page 76.

Cable Length

The length of the TIC3 cable.

Token-Ring Network Destination

Your name for the token-ring LAN connected to the TIC3.

Figure 45. Example TIC3 Plugging Sheet

Preparing the Plugging Sheet for the Service Processor

Prepare your plugging sheet for each service processor using Chapter 1, "Physical Planning Details," pages 71 and 73.

There is a copy of the blank plugging sheet provided on page 145.

Preparing the Plugging Sheet for the EPO Cables

The emergency power-off (EPO) cables allow the host to directly control the power state (on or off) of the controller frame.

Prepare your plugging sheet:

1. With the cable characteristics chosen using "ESCON Jumper Cables and Emergency Power-Off Cables (3746-9x0)" on page 68. They are:

Cable group or cable part number Cable length.

- 2. With the blank plugging sheet provided on page 146. See the explanation of the plugging sheet in Figure 46.
- 3. Prepare the cable labels according to 133.

3746 Con	troller Nan	ne: <i>CC 2</i>		
From	То	Cable Group or Part Number	Cable Length	Comments
3746			18 m	

Legend:

3746 Controller Name

Your identification for the 3746 Network Node frame.

Cable Group or Part Number

Information is available on page 68.

Cable Length

Information is available on page 68.

Figure 46. Example of EPO Cables Plugging Sheet

Preparing LIC12, Token-Ring, and EPO Cable Labels

To prepare the cable labels, proceed as follows:

- 1. Obtain the necessary number of cable labels required for your installation. Two labels are needed for each cable.
- 2. Depending on the type of cable:
 - a. Enter the line characteristics given in your plugging sheets in the appropriate areas.

Port Number	Line Reference:
CC Name:	Cable Group or Part Number:
LIC Type	Cable Length:
HSS/ELA	Destination:
TRA	

b. Attach an identical label to each end of each cable (3746 side and destination side).

Preparing the LIC11, LCB, and ARC Cable Labels

The line connection boxes (LCBs) are the connectivity interface between the 3746 LIC11 and the customer DCEs/DTEs. Two LCBs can be installed in the 3746 itself and more in the Controller Expansion (FC 5023) or independent customer racks.

The LCBB connects to the LIC11, to the LCBE, and houses a maximum of 15 ARCs.

The LCBE connects to the LCBB and houses a maximum of 15 ARCs.

The LCB and cable identification uses the labels referenced A, B, or C in Figure 47 on page 135:

- · Label A is used to identify the LCB
- Label B is on the cable between the LIC11 and the LCBB
- Label C is on the ARC cables connecting the DCE/DTEs to the LCBs.

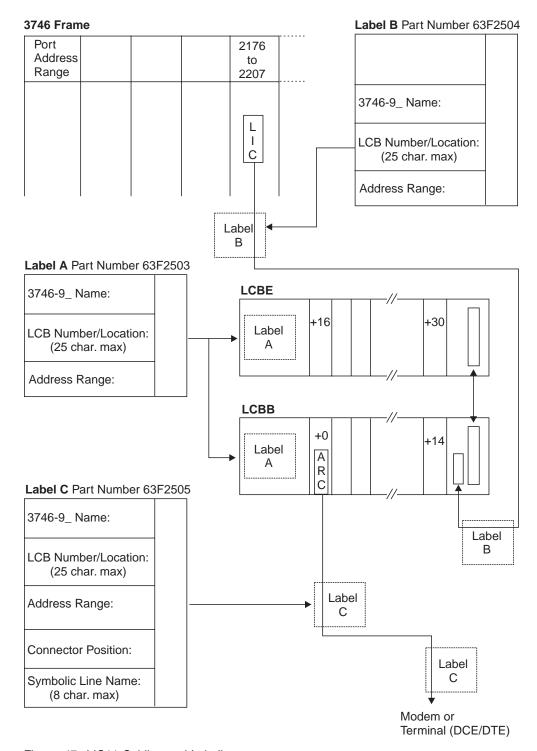


Figure 47. LIC11 Cabling and Labeling

Preparing the Plugging Sheets for 3745 and 3746-L13, -L14, -L15 Lowand Medium-Speed Lines (LIC Types 1 to 6)

Note: The LIC4A, LIC5, and LIC6 are no longer manufactured.

Prepare your plugging sheets for the LIC types 1 to 6:

- 1. With the line characteristics provided in your installation sheets:
 - For lines attached to a LIC type 1 to 4, they are:

LIC type Port number Line protocol Line interface

• For lines attached to a LIC type 5 or 6, they are:

LIC type Port number

For information about the installation sheets, refer to Chapter 2, "Familiarizing Yourself with the Installation Sheets."

- 2. With your network line characteristics:
 - For a LIC type 5 or 6, they are:

Network type Line reference

• For all LIC types, there is one:

Destination.

- 3. Use the cable characteristics adapted to your installation and chosen using Chapter 1, "Physical Planning Details," starting on page 78. They are:
 - · Cable group or cable part number
 - · Cable length.
- 4. With copies of the blank plugging sheets provided on page 143 or 148.

There is an example plugging sheet for:

- LIC types 1 to 4 in Figure 48 on page 137
- LIC types 5 and 6 in Figure 49 on page 138.
- 5. If an IBM service representative is not doing the installation or change, prepare the cable labels according to "Preparing LIC12, Token-Ring, and EPO Cable Labels" on page 133.

3745 Communication Controller Name: CC 1						Frame: 3746-L15 LIC Unit: 05 D	;
LIC Port	LIC Type	Cable Group or Part Number	Cable Length	Line Interface	Line Protocol	Destination	Comments
0384	3	PN 6398665	100 m	V.35 DCE	SDLC	B3 LA GAUDE	
0385							

Legend:

3745 Communication Controller Name

Your identification for the 3745 base frame.

Frame

The frame where the LICs are located.

LIC Unit

The LIC location within the frame.

LIC Port

Address of the LIC as it appears on the HONE installation sheet.

LIC Type

The LIC can be a type 1, 3, 4A, or 4B.

Cable Group or Part Number

This information is available starting on page 78.

Cable Length

The length of the LIC cable.

Line Interface

One of more of the following: Transfix, V.24, V.25, V.25 bis (auto-call), V.35 (DCE or direct attachment), X.20 bis, X.21, and X.21 bis.

Line Protocol

One of the following: BSC, SDLC, or asynchronous.

Destination

The destination of the line using the LIC.

Figure 48. Example Plugging Sheet for LIC Types 1 to 4

3745 Cd	ommunicatio	on Controller Na	me: <i>CC1</i>		ame: <i>3746-L14</i> C Unit: <i>06 D</i>
LIC Port	LIC Type	Network Type	Line Reference	Destination	Comments
0640 0641	5	LDM	R370L40	Tech Support, Orlando	

Legend:

3745 Communication Controller Name

Your identification for the 3745 base frame.

Frame

The frame where the LICs are located.

LIC Unit

The LIC location within the frame.

LIC Port

Address of the LIC as it appears on the HONE installation sheet.

LIC Type

The LIC can be a type 5 or 6.

Network Type

One of the following: analog, DSU/CSU, baseband, private, or limited distance modem (LDM).

Line Reference

Either common carrier or public switched telephone network.

Destination

The destination of the line using the LIC.

Figure 49. Example Plugging Sheet for LIC Types 5 and 6

Preparing the Plugging Sheets for 3745 High-Speed Lines

Prepare your high-speed line plugging sheets:

1. With the port of each line, as given by your installation sheets.

For information about the installation sheets, refer to Chapter 2, "Familiarizing Yourself with the Installation Sheets."

- 2. With the names you use to identify the line destination.
- 3. With the line characteristics of your installation:

Line interface Line protocol

4. With the cable characteristics adapted to your installation and chosen using Chapter 1, "Physical Planning Details," starting on page 78. They are:

Line type

Cable group or cable part number

Cable length

- 5. With copies of the blank plugging sheet provided on page 149. See the example plugging sheet in Figure 50.
- 6. If an IBM service representative is not doing the installation or change, prepare the cable labels as described on page 133.

3745 C	ommunication Con		Model: 3745-41A		
Port	Cable Group or Part Number	Cable Length	Line destination	Line Interface and Protocoll	Comments
1084	CG 5831	33 ft	Jordan Meeting Room, Bld 100	V.35 DCE Duplex	

Legend:

3745 Communication Controller Name

Your identification for the 3745 base frame.

Frame

These high-speed lines are only connected to the 3745 frame.

Add the 3745 model number.

LIC Port

Address of the LIC12 as it appears on the HONE installation sheet.

Cable Group or Part Number

This information is available on page 76.

Cable Length

The length of the line cable.

Line Destination

Your name for the destination of the line LIC cable.

Line Interface and Protocol

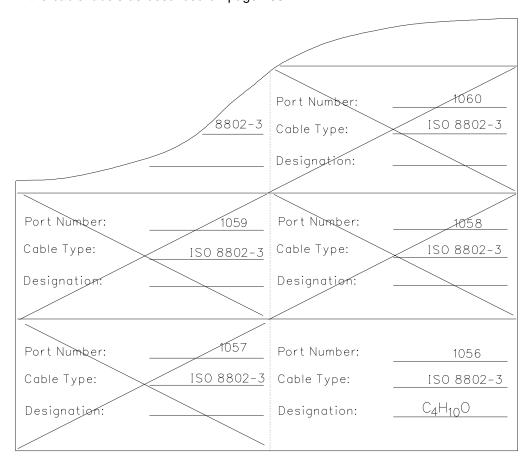
One of the following: V.35 (DCE, direct attachment) or X.21 (DCE, direct attachment, Transfix, EIA-547).

Figure 50. Example 3745 High-Speed Line Plugging Sheet

Preparing the Plugging Sheets for 3745 Ethernet Adapters

Prepare your Ethernet adapter plugging diagram:

- With the port of each Ethernet adapter, as given by your installation sheets.
 For information about the installation sheets, refer to Chapter 2, "Familiarizing Yourself with the Installation Sheets."
- 2. With the names you use to identify the Ethernet LANs (designation).
- 3. With a copy of the blank plugging diagram provided on page 150. See the example plugging sheet in Figure 51.
- 4. Enter the Ethernet LAN name on the Designation line that matches its port number.
- 5. If an IBM service representative is not doing the installation or change, prepare the cable labels as described on page 133.



Legend:

Port Number

Address of the Ethernet adapter as it appears on the HONE installation sheet.

Cable Type

Standard Ethernet LAN cable.

Designation

Your name for the Ethernet LAN connected to the Ethernet port.

Figure 51. Example Plugging Diagram for Ethernet Adapters

Plugging Sheets

This section provides a set of blank plugging sheets. Photocopy as many as you need of each.

Once filled in, these sheets reflect the cabling plan of:

- Low- and medium-speed lines attached to one LIC Unit type 1 for the LIC types 1, 3, 4A, and 4B
- Low- and medium-speed lines attached to one LIC Unit type 2 for the LIC types 5 and 6
- Low- and medium-speed lines (LIC11)
- High-speed lines (LIC12)
- Token-ring connections (TIC3)
- · Ethernet networks
- Communication lines attached to the 3746-900 (LIC types 11 and 12)
- · Service processor and network node processor
- Service processor RSF link
- Emergency power-OFF cables
- · Customer power connection.

Use these sheets at installation time and for any later cable changes. After using these sheets at installation time, store them in this manual for future reference.

Plugging Sheet for 3746 Low- and Medium-Speed Lines (LIC11)

3746 Con	troller Name						
LIC Port:		LIC Cab	le Length:	LIC Cable Part Num	nber:		
Address Range:							
LCBB Number/Location (Up to 25 characters):							
ARC Position	Port	ARC Type	ARC Cable Length	Symbolic Line Name (Up to 8 characters)	Comments		
+0							
+1							
+2							
+3							
+4							
+5							
+6							
+7							
+8							
+9							
+10							
+11							
+12							
+13							
+14							
LCBE Nu	mber/Locatio	n (Up to 25 char	acters):				
+16							
+17							
+18							
+19							
+20							
+21							
+22							
+23							
+24							
+25							
+26							
+27							
+28							
+29							
+30							

Plugging Sheet for 3746 High-Speed Lines (LIC12)

ort	Cable Group or Part Number	Length	Line Destination	Comments

Plugging Sheet for 3745 and 3746 Token-Ring Adapters

IC ort	Cable Group or Part Number	Cable Length	Token-Ring Network Destination	Comments

Plugging Sheet for 3745/3746 Service Processor

Cable Type	Part Number	Cable Length	Comments
Service Processor to SPAU	6339098	2.4 m (8 ft)	Shipped with service processor.
3746 CBSP2/TIC3 to SPAU		9 m (30 ft)	Shipped with 3746.
3746 Network Node Processor to SPAU	6339098	2.4 m (8 ft)	Shipped with network node processor.
3745 MOSS to SPAU		9 m (30 ft)	Shipped with 3745.
Service Processor to Modem	57G7528	15 m (49.2 ft)	Shipped with service processor.
Modem to Telephone Line		4.6 m (15 ft)	Shipped with service processor.

Plugging Sheet for 3746 EPO Cables

3746 Cont	3746 Controller Name:								
From	То	Cable Group or Part Number	Cable Length	Comments					

Plugging Sheet for 3745 and 3746 Low- and Medium-Speed Lines (LIC Types 1 to 4)

3745 C	ommunic	ation Controller N	lame:	Frame: LIC Unit:			
LIC Port	LIC Type	Cable Group or Part Number	Cable Length	Line Interface	Line Protocol	Destination	Comments

Plugging Sheet for 3745 and 3746 Low- and Medium-Speed Lines (LIC Types 5 and 6)

3745 Cd	ommunication	on Controller Na	те:	Frame: LIC Unit:		
LIC Port	LIC Type	Network Type	Line Reference	Destination	Comments	

Plugging Sheet for 3745 High-Speed Lines

3745 Cd	3745 Communication Controller Name:			Frame: 3745	
Port	Cable Group or Part Number	Cable Length	Line Destination	Line Interface and Protocol	Comments

Plugging Diagram for 3745 Ethernet LAN Adapters

Port Number:	1071	Port Number:	1070
Cable Type:	ISO 8802-3	Cable Type:	ISO 8802-3
Designation:		Designation:	
Port Number:	1069	Port Number:	1068
Cable Type:	ISO 8802-3	Cable Type:	ISO 8802-3
Designation:		Designation:	
Port Number:	1067	Port Number:	1066
Cable Type:	ISO 8802-3	Cable Type:	ISO 8802-3
Designation:		Designation:	
Port Number:	1065	Port Number:	1064
Cable Type:	ISO 8802-3	Cable Type:	ISO 8802-3
Designation:		Designation:	
Port Number:	1063	Port Number:	1062
Cable Type:	ISO 8802-3	Cable Type:	ISO 8802-3
Designation:		Designation:	
Port Number:	1061	Port Number:	1060
Cable Type:	ISO 8802-3	Cable Type:	ISO 8802-3
Designation:		Designation:	
Port Number:	1059	Port Number:	1058
Cable Type:	ISO 8802-3	Cable Type:	ISO 8802-3
Designation:		Designation:	
Port Number:	1057	Port Number:	1056
Cable Type:	ISO 8802-3	Cable Type:	ISO 8802-3
Designation:		Designation:	

List of Abbreviations

AB	area border	CLA	communication line adapter
ACF	advanced communications function	CLP	communication line processor
ACF/VTAM	advanced communications function for	CM	communications manager
	the virtual telecommunications access method	CNN	composite network node
ANR	automatic network routing	CNM	communication network management
APPN	advanced peer-to-peer networking	cos	cost of service
ARB	adaptive rate-based flow/congestion	CP	control point
7	control	CR	communications rate
ARC	active remote connector	CSU	customer service unit
ARP	address resolution protocol	DCAF	distributed console access facility
AS	autonomous system	DCE	data circuit-terminating equipment
ASB	autonomous system border	DDS	digital data service
ASE	autonomous system external	DE	discard eligibility
ASCII	american national standard code for	DLC	data link control
	information interchange	DLCI	data link connection identifier
AUTO	automatic	DLUR	dependent LU requester
BECN	backward explicit congestion notification	DLUS	dependent LU server
BER	box event record	DMUX	double multiplex circuit
BGP	border gateway protocol	DSU	data service unit
ВООТР	bootstrap protocol	DTE	data terminal equipment
bps	bits per second	DX	duplex
BRS	bandwidth reservation system	EBCDIC	extended binary-coded decimal
BSC	binary synchronous communication		interchange code
C&SM	communications and system management	EBN	extended border node
CBSP	control bus and service processor	EC	engineering change
CCITT	comité consultative international	EMIF	ESCON multiple image facility
00111	télégraphique et téléphonique	EN	end node
	The international telegraph and	EP	emulation program
	telephone consultative committee	EPO	emergency power OFF
CCU	central control unit	ESCA	ESCON channel adapter
CD	carrier detector	ESCC	ESCON channel coupler
CDF-E	configuration data file - extended	ESCD	ESCON Director
CE	customer engineer	ESCON	Enterprise Systems CONnection
CF3745	3745 and 3746 configurator and	ESCP	ESCON processor
CHDID	performance model	FC	feature code
CHPID	channel path id	FDX	full duplex
CIDR	classless inter-domain routing	FECN	forward explicit congestion notification
CIR	committed information rate	FRFH	frame relay frame handler
CLIST	command list	FRSE	frame relay switching equipment

FRTE	frame relay terminating equipment	MAC	medium access control
HCD	hardware configuration definition	MAU	medium attachment unit
HDX	half duplex	MB	megabyte (processor storage)
HI	high		1MB = 2 ²⁰ bytes (1 048 576 bytes)
HLA	host link address	Mbps	megabits per second (speed or communication volume per second)
HONE	hands-on network environment		1 Mbps = 1 000 000 (one million) bits per
HPR	high performance routing		second
HSS	high-speed scanner	MCL	microcode change level
ICMP	internet control message protocol	MES	miscellaneous equipment specification
IML	initial microcode load	MIB	management information base
INN	intermediate network node or	MIH	missing interrupt handler
	IBM information network	MLC	machine level control
IOCP	Input/Output Configuration Program	MLTG	multi-link transmission group
IP	internet, or internetwork, protocol	MOSS-E	maintenance and operator subsystem - extended
IPL	initial program load	MTP	multipoint
IPR	installation planning representative	MUX	multiplex circuit
ITU-T	international telecommunications union - telecommunications (ex-CCITT)	MVS	multiple virtual storage
КВ	kilobyte (processor storage) 1KB = 2 ¹⁰ bytes (1 024 bytes)	NAU	network addressable unit
		NMBA	nonbroadcast multiaccess
kbps	kilobits per second (speed or	NCP	Network Control Program
	communication volume per second) 1 kbps = 1 000 (one thousand) bits per	NDRS	non-disruptive route switching
	second	NGMF	netView graphic monitor facility
LAA	locally administered address	NN	network node
LAN	local area network	NNP	network node processor
LCB	line connection box	NPM	netView performance monitor
LCBB	line connection box base	NRZI	non-return-to-zero inverted
LCBE	line connection box expansion	NVT	network virtual terminal
LCP	link control protocol	ODLC	outboard data link control
LDM	limited distance modem	OSPF	open shortest path first
LED	light emitting diode	PBN	peripheral border node
LIB n	line interface board type n	PCI	Peripheral component interconnect
LIC n	line interface coupler type n	PEP	partitioned emulation program
LSA	link state advertisement	PING	packet internet groper
LIU n	line interface coupler unit type n	PN	peripheral node
LIV	link integrity verification	PPP	point-to-point protocol
LMI	local management interface	PPPNCP	point-to-point network control protocol
LP	logical partition	PTP	point-to-point
LPDA ®	link problem determination aid	PTT	post, telegraph, and telephone
LQ	line quality	PU	physical unit
LU	logical unit	PVC	permanent virtual circuit
	law and a case a		

LSS

low-speed scanner

QUAL	quality	тс	test control
RCV	receive clock	TCM	trellis code modulation
RETAIN ®	remote technical assistance information	TCP	transmission control protocol
	network	TG	transmission group
RFS	ready for sending	THRES	threshold
RIP	routing information protocol	TICn	token-ring interface coupler type n
ROS	read-only storage	TIM	time services
RSF	remote support facility	TOS	type of service
RTP	rapid transport protocol	TPF	transaction processing facility
RTS	request to send	TRA	token-ring adapter
SDLC	synchronous data link control	TRP	token-ring processor
SMUX	single multiplex circuit	TSS	transmission subsystem
SNBU	switched network backup	UDP	user datagram protocol
SNI	SNA network interconnection	UTP	unshielded twisted pair
SNMP	simple network management protocol	VTAM	virtual telecommunications access
SPAU	service processor access unit		method
SRC	service reference code	XID	exchange station identification
S/S	start-stop	XMIT	transmit
SVC	switched virtual circuit		

Glossary

This glossary defines new terms used in this manual.

adaptive rate-based flow and congestion control (ARB). A function of High Performance Routing (HPR) that regulates the flow of data over an RTP connection by adaptively changing the sender's rate based on feedback on the receiver's rate. It allows high link utilization and prevents congestion before it occurs, rather than recovering after congestion has occurred.

advanced communication function (ACF). A group of IBM licensed programs. principally VTAM programs. TCAM, NCP, and SSP, that use the concepts of Systems Network Architecture (SNA), including distribution of function and resource sharing.

advanced communications function for the virtual telecommunications access method (ACF/VTAM). An IBM licensed program that controls communication and the flow of data in an SNA network. It provides single-domain, multiple-domain, and interconnected network capability.

advanced peer-to-peer networking (APPN). Data communications support that routes data in a network between two or more advanced program-to-program communications (APPC) systems that do not need to be adjacent.

automatic network routing. A function of High Performance Routing (HPR) that is provides a low-level routing mechanism that requires no intermediate storage.

channel adapter (CA). A communication controller hardware unit used to attach the controller to a host processor.

communication controller. A device that directs the transmission of data over the data links of a network; its operation may be controlled by a program executed in a processor to which the controller is connected or it may be controlled by a program executed within the device. For example, the IBM 3745 and 3746 Network Nodes.

communications manager. A function of the OS/2 Extended Edition program that lets a workstation connect to a host computer and use the host resources as well as the resources of the other personal computers to which the workstation is attached, either directly or through a host system. The communications manager provides application programming interfaces (APIs) so that users and develop their own applications.

configuration data file - extended (CDF-E). A 3746 Network Node MOSS-E file that contains a description

of all the hardware features (presence, type, address, and characteristics).

communications management configuration host node. The type 5 host processor in a communications management configuration that does all network-control functions in the network except for the control of devices channel-attached to a data host nodes. Synonymous with communications management host. See also data host node.

control panel. A panel that contains switches and indicators for the customer's operator and service personnel.

control program. A computer program designed to schedule and to supervise the execution of programs of the controller.

control subsystem. The part of the controller that stores and executes the control program, and monitors the data transfers over the channel and transmission interfaces.

customer engineer. See IBM service representative

data circuit-terminating equipment (DCE). The equipment installed at the user's premises that provides all the functions required to establish, maintain, and terminate a connection, and the signal conversion between the data terminal equipment (DTE) and the line. For example, a modem is a DCE.

Note: The DCE may be a stand-alone equipment or integrated in the 3745.

data terminal equipment (DTE). That part of a data station that serves as a data source, data link , or both, and provides for the data communication control function according to protocols. For example, the 3174 and PS/2s are DTEs.

data host node. In a communication management configuration, a type 5 host node that is dedicated to processing applications and does not control network resources, except for its channel adapter-attached or communication adapter-attached devices. Synonymous with data host. See also communications management configuration host node.

direct attachment. The attachment of a DTE to another DTE without a DCE.

ESCON channel. A channel having an Enterprise System Connection* channel-to-control-unit I/O interface that uses optical cables as a transmission medium.

ESCON channel adapter (ESCA). A communication controller hardware unit used to attach the controller to a host via ESCON fiber optics. An ESCA consists of an ESCON channel processor (ESCP) and an ESCON channel coupler (ESCC).

ESCON channel coupler (ESCC). A communication controller hardware unit which is the interface between the ESCON channel processor and the ESCON fiber optic cable.

ESCON channel processor (ESCP). A

communication controller hardware unit which provides the channel data link control for the ESCON channel adapter.

distributed console access facility. (1) This program product provides a remote console function that allows a user at one programmable workstation (PS/2) to remotely control the keyboard input and monitor the display of output of another programmable workstation. The DCAF program does not affect the application programs that are running on the workstation that is being controlled. (2) An icon that represents the Distributed Console Access Facility.

enterprise systems chhnection (ESCON). A set of IBM products and services that provides a dynamically connected environment within an enterprise.

Host. See host processor

host processor. (1) A processor that controls all or part of a user application network. (2) In a network, the processing unit where the access method for the network resides. (3) In an SNA network, the processing unit that contains a system services control point (SSCP). (4) A processing unit that executes the access method for attached communication controllers.

High performance routing (HPR). An extension of APPN that provides faster traffic throughput, lower delays, and lower storage overheads.

IBM service representative. An individual in IBM who does maintenance services for IBM products or systems. Also called the IBM Customer Engineer.

initial microcode load (IML). The process of loading the microcode into an adapter, the MOSS, or the service processor.

internet. (1) A wide area network connecting disparate networks using the internetwork protocol (IP) (2) A public domain wide area network connecting thousands of disparate networks in industry, education, government and research. The Internet uses TCP/IP as the standard for transmitting information.

internet address. The numbering system used in IP internetwork communications to specify a particular

network, or a particular host on that network with which to communicate.

internet control message protocol (ICMP). A protocol used by a gateway to communicate with a source host, for example, to report an error in a datagram. It is an integral part of the Internetwork Protocol (IP).

internetwork protocol. A protocol that routes data from its source to its destination in an internet environment. It is also called the Internet Protocol.

internetwork. Any wide area network connecting more than one network.

initial program load (IPL). The initialization procedure that causes the 3745 control program (NCP) to begin operation.

LAN-attached console. A PS/2 attached to the token-ring LAN that has the service processor attached. It is used to operate remotely the MOSS and MOSS-E functions.

IP router. A device that enables an Internetwork Protocol (IP) host to act as a gateway for routing data between separate networks.

line interface coupler (LIC). A circuit that attaches up to four transmission cables to the controller (from DTEs, DCEs or telecommunication lines).

locally administered address. In a local area network, an adapter address that the user can assign to override the universally administered address.

maintenance and operator subsystem - extended (MOSS-E). The licensed internal code loaded on the service processor hard disk to provide maintenance and operator facilities to the user and IBM service representative.

microcode. A program that is loaded in a processor (for example, the MOSS processor) to replace a hardware function. The microcode is not accessible to the customer.

modem (modulator-demodulator). See DCE.

multiple virtual storage (MVS). Multiple Virtual Storage, consisting of MVS/System Product Version 1 and the MVS/370 Data Facility Product operating on a System/370[™] processor.

NetView. An IBM licensed program used to monitor a network, manage it, and diagnose its problems.

nonswitched line. A connection between systems or devices that does not have to be made by dialing. The connection can be point-to-point or multipoint. The line can be leased or private. Contrast with *switched line*...

ping. A simple IP application that sends one or more messages to a specified destination host requesting a reply. Usually used to verify that the target host exists, or that its IP address is a valid address.

remote console. A PS/2 attached to the 3746 Network Node either by a switched line (with modems) or by one of the communication lines of the user network.

remote technical assistance information network (RETAIN).

service processor. The processor attached to a 3745, 3746-900, and 3746-950 via a token-ring LAN.

remote support facility (RSF). RSF provides IBM maintenance assistance when requested via the public switched network. It is connected to the IBM RETAIN database system.

service representative. See IBM service representative

services. A set of functions designed to simplify the maintenance of a device or system.

switched line. A transmission line with which the connections are established by dialing, only when data transmission is needed. The connection is point-to-point and uses a different transmission line each time it is established. Contrast with *nonswitched line*.

synchronous data link control (SDLC). A discipline for managing synchronous, code-transparent, serial-by-bit information transfer over a link connection. Transmission exchanges may be duplex or half-duplex over switched or nonswitched links. The configuration of the link connection may be point-to-point, multipoint,

or loop. SDLC conforms to subsets of the Advanced Data Communication Control Procedures of the American National Standards Institute and High-Level Data Link Control (HDLC) of the International Standards Organization.

synchronous transmission. Data transmission in which the sending and receiving instruments are operating continuously at substantially the same frequency and are maintained, through correction, in a desired phase relationship.

token-ring adapter (TRA) type 3. 3746-900 and 3746-950 line adapter for IBM Token-Ring Network, composed of one token-ring processor card (TRP2), and two token-ring interface couplers type 3 (TIC 3s).

token-ring interface coupler type 2 (TIC2). A circuit that attaches an IBM Token-Ring network to the 3745.

token-ring interface coupler type 3 (TIC3). A circuit that attaches an IBM Token-Ring network to the 3746-900 or 3746-950.

user access area. A specific area in the controller where the customer can install, remove, change, or swap couplers and cables without IBM assistance.

universally administered address. In a local area network, the address permanently encoded in an adapter at the time of manufacture. All universally administered addresses are unique.

user application network. A configuration of data processing products, such as processors, controllers, and terminals, for data processing and information exchange. This configuration may use circuit-switched, packet-switched, and leased-circuit services provided by carriers or PTT. Also called a *user network*.

V.24, **V.35**, and **X.21**. ITU-T (ex-CCITT) recommendations on transmission interfaces.

Bibliography

Customer Documentation for the 3745 (All Models), and 3746 (Model 900)

Table 24 (Page 1 of 6). Cust	omer Documentation for the 3745 Models X10 and X1A, and 3746 Model 900			
This customer documentation has the following formats:				
Books	Books and Diskettes Books and CD-ROM			
Finding Information				
	3745 Models A and 3746 Books			
	All of the books in the 3745 Models A and 3746 library are available on the CD-ROM that contains the Licensed Internal Code (LIC) for the machine.			
Evaluating and Configuring				
GA33-0092	IBM 3745 Communication Controller Models 210, 310, 410, and 610			
	Introduction			
	Gives an introduction of the IBM Models 210 to 610 capabilities.			
	For Models A, refer to the <i>Overview</i> , GA33-0180.			
GA33-0180	IBM 3745 Communication Controller Models A and 170 ² IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Models 900 and 950			
	Overview			
	Gives an overview of connectivity capabilities within SNA, APPN, and IP networking.			
GA27-4234	IBM 3745 Communication Controller Models A ² IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Models 900 and 950			
	Planning Series: Overview, Installation, and Integration			
	Provides information for:			
	 Overall 3746 planning Installation and upgrade scenarios Controller and service processor network integration Related MOSS-E and CCM worksheets for these tasks. 			

,	Customer Documentation for the 3745 Models X10 and X1A, and 3746 Model 900
GA27-4235	IBM 3745 Communication Controller Models A ² IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Models 900 and 950
	Planning Series: Serial Line Adapters
	Provides information for:
	 Serial line adapter descriptions Serial line adapter line weights and connectivity Types of SDLC support Configuring X.25 lines Performance tuning for frame-relay, PPP, X.25, and NCP lines. ISDN adapter description and configuration.
GA27-4236	IBM 3745 Communication Controller Models A ² IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Models 900 and 950
	Planning Series: Token Ring and Ethernet
	Provides information for:
	Token-ring adapter description and configurationEthernet adapter description and configuration.
GA27-4237	IBM 3745 Communication Controller Models A ² IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Models 900 and 950
	Planning Series: ESCON Channels
	Provides information for:
	 ESCON adapter descriptions ESCON configuration and tuning information ESCON configuration examples.
GA27-4238	IBM 3745 Communication Controller Models A ² IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Models 900 and 950
	Planning Series: Physical Planning
	Provides information for:
	 3746 and MAE physical planning details 3746 and MAE cable information Explanation of installation sheets 3746 plugging sheets.

GA27-4239 IBM 3745 Communication Controller Models A ² IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Models 900 and 950	
Planning Series: Management Planning	
Provides information for:	
 Overview for 3746 3746 APPN/HPR, IP router, and X.25 NetView Performance Monitor (NPM), remote console MAE APPN/HPR management. 	es, and RSF
GA27-4240 IBM 3745 Communication Controller Models A ² IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Models 900 and 950	
Planning Series: Multiaccess Enclosure Planning	
Provides information for:	
 MAE adapters details MAE ESCON planning and configuration ATM and ISDN support. 	
GA27-4241 IBM 3745 Communication Controller Models A ² IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Models 900 and 950	
Planning Series: Protocols Description	
Provides information for:	
Overview and details about APPN/HPR and IP.	
On-line information IBM 3745 Communication Controller Models A ² IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Models 900 and 950	
Planning Series: Controller Configuration and Management Worksheets	s
Provides planning worksheets for ESCON, Multiaccess Er token-ring definitions.	nclosure, serial line, and
Preparing Your Site	
GC22-7064 IBM System/360™, System/370™, 4300 Processor	
Input/Output Equipment Installation Manual-Physical Including Technical News Letter GN22-5490)	Planning
Provides information for physical installation for the 3745	
For 3745 Models A and 3746 Model 900, refer to the <i>Plan</i>	nning Guide, GA33-0457.
GA33-0127 IBM 3745 Communication Controller Models 210, 310, 410, and 610	
Preparing for Connection	
Helps for preparing the 3745 Models 210 to 610 cable ins	stallation.
For 3745 Models A refer to the Connection and Integration	on Guide, SA33-0129.

reparing	for Operation	
	GA33-0400	IBM 3745 Communication Controller All Models ³ IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Models 900 and 950
		Safety Information ¹
		Provides general safety guidelines.
	SA33-0129	IBM 3745 Communication Controller All Models ³ IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Model 900
(°)		Connection and Integration Guide ¹
		Contains information for connecting hardware and integrating network of the 3745 and 3746-900 after installation.
	SA33-0416	Line Interface Coupler Type 5 and Type 6 Portable Keypad Display
		Migration and Integration Guide
		Contains information for moving and testing LIC types 5 and 6.
	SA33-0158	IBM 3745 Communication Controller All Models ³ IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Model 900
		Console Setup Guide ¹
		Provides information for:
		 Installing local, alternate, or remote consoles for 3745 Models 130 to 610 Configuring user workstations to remotely control the service processor for 3745 Models A and 3746 Model 900 using: DCAF program Telnet Client program Java Console support.
ustomizi	ng Your Control Pro	gram
	SA33-0178	Guide to Timed IPL and Rename Load Module
		Provides VTAM procedures for:
		Scheduling an automatic reload of the 3745Getting 3745 load module changes transparent to the operations staff.
perating	and Testing	
	SA33-0098	IBM 3745 Communication Controller All Models ⁴
		Basic Operations Guide ¹
		Provides instructions for daily routine operations on the 3745 Models 130 to 610.
	SA33-0177	IBM 3745 Communication Controller Models A ² IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Model 900
		Basic Operations Guide ¹
		Provides instructions for daily routine operations on the 3745 Models 17A to 61A, and 3746 Model 900 operating as an SNA node (using NCP), APPN/HPR Network Node, and IP Router.

Table 24	(Page 5 of 6) Custon	mor Decumentation for the 2715 Models V10 and V11 and 2716 Model 000
Table 24	· · ·	mer Documentation for the 3745 Models X10 and X1A, and 3746 Model 900
	SA33-0097	IBM 3745 Communication Controller All Models ³
		Advanced Operations Guide ¹
		Provides instructions for advanced operations and testing, using the 3745 MOSS console.
	On-line Information	Controller Configuration and Management Application
		Provides a graphical user interface for configuring and managing a 3746 APPN/HPR Network Node and IP Router, and its resources. It is also available as a stand-alone application, using an OS/2 workstation. Defines and explains all the 3746 Network Node and IP Router configuration parameters through its online help.
	SH11-3081	IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Models 900 and 950
		Controller Configuration and Management: User's Guide⁵
		Explains how to use CCM and gives examples of the configuration process.
	GA33-0479	IBM 3745 Communication Controller Models A IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Models 900 and 950
		NetView Console APPN Command Reference Guide
		Explains how to use the RUN COMMAND from the NetView S/390 Program and gives examples.
Managing I	Problems	
	SA33-0096	IBM 3745 Communication Controller All Models ³
		Problem Determination Guide ¹
		A guide to perform problem determination on the 3745 Models 130 to 61A.
	On-line Information	Problem Analysis Guide
		An online guide to analyze alarms, events, and control panel codes on:
		 IBM 3745 Communication Controller Models A² IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Models 900 and 950.
	SA33-0175	IBM 3745 Communication Controller Models A ² IBM 3746 Expansion Unit Model 900 IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Model 950
لــــــا		Alert Reference Guide
		Provides information about events or errors reported by alerts for:
		 IBM 3745 Communication Controller Models A² IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Models 900 and 950.

Table 24 (Page 6 of 6). Customer Documentation for the 3745 Models X10 and X1A, and 3746 Model 900

- ¹ Documentation shipped with the 3745.
- ² 3745 Models 17A to 61A.
- ³ 3745 Models 130 to 61A.
- ⁴ Except 3745 Models A.
- ⁵ Documentation shipped with the 3746-900.

Additional Customer Documentation for the 3745 Models 130, 150, 160, 170, and 17A

Table 25. Additional Custom	er Documentation for the 3745 Models 130 to 17A
This customer documentation has	s the following format:
	Books
Finding Information	
	3745 Models A and 3746 Books
	All of the books in the 3745 Models A and 3746 library are available on the CD-ROM that contains the Licensed Internal Code (LIC) for the machine.
Evaluating and Configuring	
GA33-0138	IBM 3745 Communication Controller Models 130, 150, 160, and 170
	Introduction
	Gives an introduction about the IBM Models 130 to 170 capabilities, including Model 160.
	For Model 17A refer to the <i>Overview</i> , GA33-0180.
Preparing Your Site	
GA33-0140	IBM 3745 Communication Controller Models 130, 150, 160, and 170
	Preparing for Connection
	Helps for preparing the 3745 Models 130 to 170 cable installation.
	For 3745 Model 17A refer to the Connection and Integration Guide, SA33-0129.
¹ Documentation shipped with the	∍ 3745.

Customer Documentation for the 3746 Model 950

Table 26 (Page 1 of 4). Customer Documentation for the 3746 Model 950				
This customer documentation has the following formats:				
B o o k s	Online Books and Diskettes			
Finding Information				
	3745 Models A and 3746 Books			
	All of the books in the 3745 Models A and 3746 library are available on the CD-ROM that contains the Licensed Internal Code (LIC) for the machine.			
Preparing for Operation				
GA33-0400	IBM 3745 Communication Controller All Models ¹ IBM 3746 Expansion Unit Model 900 IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Model 950			
	Safety Information ²			
	Provides general safety guidelines.			
Evaluating and Configuring				
GA33-0180	IBM 3745 Communication Controller Models A and 170 ³ IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Models 900 and 950			
	Overview			
	Gives an overview of connectivity capabilities within SNA, APPN, and IP networking.			
GA27-4234	IBM 3745 Communication Controller Models A ² IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Models 900 and 950			
	Planning Series: Overview, Installation, and Integration			
	Provides information for:			
	 Overall 3746 planning Installation and upgrade scenarios Controller and service processor network integration Related MOSS-E and CCM worksheets for these tasks. 			

Table 26 (Page 2 of 4). Customer Documentation for the 3746 Model 950			
	GA27-4235	IBM 3745 Communication Controller Models A ² IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Models 900 and 950	
		Planning Series: Serial Line Adapters	
		Provides information for:	
		 Serial line adapter descriptions Serial line adapter line weights and connectivity Types of SDLC support Configuring X.25 lines Performance tuning for frame-relay, PPP, X.25, and NCP lines. ISDN adapter description and configuration. 	
	GA27-4236	IBM 3745 Communication Controller Models A ² IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Models 900 and 950	
		Planning Series: Token Ring and Ethernet	
		Provides information for:	
		 Token-ring adapter description and configuration Ethernet adapter description and configuration. 	
	GA27-4237	IBM 3745 Communication Controller Models A ² IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Models 900 and 950	
		Planning Series: ESCON Channels	
		Provides information for:	
		 ESCON adapter descriptions ESCON configuration and tuning information ESCON configuration examples. 	
	GA27-4238	IBM 3745 Communication Controller Models A ² IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Models 900 and 950	
		Planning Series: Physical Planning	
		Provides information for:	
		 3746 and MAE physical planning details 3746 and MAE cable information Explanation of installation sheets 3746 plugging sheets. 	

Table 26	(Page 3 of 4). Custo	mer Documentation for the 3746 Model 950
	GA27-4239	IBM 3745 Communication Controller Models A ² IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Models 900 and 950
		Planning Series: Management Planning
		Provides information for:
		 Overview for 3746 3746 APPN/HPR, IP router, and X.25 NetView Performance Monitor (NPM), remote consoles, and RSF MAE APPN/HPR management.
	GA27-4240	IBM 3745 Communication Controller Models A ² IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Models 900 and 950
		Planning Series: Multiaccess Enclosure Planning
		Provides information for:
		MAE adapters detailsMAE ESCON planning and configurationATM and ISDN support.
	GA27-4241	IBM 3745 Communication Controller Models A ² IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Models 900 and 950
		Planning Series: Protocols Description
		Provides information for:
		Overview and details about APPN/HPR and IP.
	On-line information	IBM 3745 Communication Controller Models A ² IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Models 900 and 950
		Planning Series: Controller Configuration and Management Worksheets
		Provides planning worksheets for ESCON, Multiaccess Enclosure, serial line, and token-ring definitions.

perating a	and Testing	
	SA33-0356	IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Model 950
		User's Guide ²
		Explains how to:
		 Carry out daily routine operations on Nways controller Install, test, and customize the Nways controller after installation Configure user's workstations to remotely control the service processor using: DCAF program Telnet client program Java Console support.
	On-line information	Controller Configuration and Management Application
		Provides a graphical user interface for configuring and managing a 3746 APPN/HPR network node and IP Router, and its resources. It is also available as a stand-alone application, using an OS/2 workstation. Defines and explains all the 3746 Network Node and IP Router configuration paramete through its on-line help.
	SH11-3081	IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Models 900 and 950
		Controller Configuration and Management: User's Guide ²
		Explains how to use CCM and gives examples of the configuration process.
	GA33-0479	IBM 3745 Communication Controller Models A IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Models 900 and 950
		NetView Console APPN Command Reference Guide
		Explains how to use the RUN COMMAND from the NetView S/390 Program and gives examples.
lanaging F	Problems	
	On-line information	Problem Analysis Guide
		An on-line guide to analyze alarms, events, and control panel codes on:
		 IBM 3745 Communication Controller Models A³ IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Models 900 and 950.
	SA33-0175	IBM 3745 Communication Controller Models A ³ IBM 3746 Expansion Unit Model 900 IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Model 950
		Alert Reference Guide
		Provides information about events or errors reported by alerts for:
		 IBM 3745 Communication Controller Models A³ IBM 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Models 900 and 950.
Models 13	30 to 61A.	

Required Documentation

The following documents are indispensable for planning for your 3745/3746 controllers:

- 3745 Communication Controller Models A and 170, 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Models 900 and 950: Overview, GA33-0180
- 3745 Communication Controller All Models, 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Model 900: Console Setup Guide, SA33-0158.

Be sure to use the latest editions of the above documents.

Related Documentation

The following documents are also helpful for planning for your 3745/3746 controllers:

- Planning for Integrated Networks, SC31-8062
- Planning and Reference for NetView, NCP, and VTAM, SC31-7122.
- Virtual Telecommunications Access Method V3 R4: Resource Definition Reference, SC31-6438

The following Enterprise Systems Connection (ESCON) documents may be helpful:

- Introducing the Enterprise Systems Connection, GA23-0383
- Enterprise Systems Connection Migration, GA23-0383
- Planning for Enterprise Systems Connection Links, GA23-0367
- Introducing Enterprise Systems Connection Directors, GA23-0363.

The following IBM International Technical Support Centers "redbooks" are generally very helpful:

- Frame Relay Guide, GG24-4463
- 3746-900 and NCP Version 7 Release 2, GG24-4464.

The following Network Control Program (NCP) documents may be helpful:

- For NCP V6 R2:
 - Network Control Program V6 R2: Migration Guide, SC31-6216
 - Network Control Program V6 R2, ACF/SSP V3 R8, EP R11: Resource Definition Guide, SC31-6209-01
 - Network Control Program V6 R2, ACF/SSP V3 R8, EP R11: Resource Definition Reference, SC31-6210-01
 - Network Control Program V6 R2: Planning and Implementation Guide, GG24-4012
 - Network Control Program V6 R2, ACF/SSP V3 R8, EP R11: Library Directory, SC31-6215.
- For NCP V6 R3:
 - Network Control Program V6 R3: Migration Guide, SC31-6217
 - Network Control Program V6 R3, ACF/SSP V3 R9, EP R11: Resource Definition Guide, SC31-6209-02
 - Network Control Program V6 R3, ACF/SSP V3 R9, EP R11: Resource Definition Reference, SC31-6210-02 Guide,
 - Network Control Program V6 R3, ACF/SSP V3 R9, EP R11: Library Directory, SC31-6218.
- For NCP V7 R1:
 - Network Control Program V7 R1: Migration Guide, SC31-6219
 - Network Control Program V7 R1, ACF/SSP V4 R1, EP R12: Resource Definition Guide, SC31-6223-00
 - Network Control Program V7 R1, ACF/SSP V4 R1, EP R12: Resource Definition Reference, SC31-6224-00
 - Network Control Program V7 R1, ACF/SSP V4 R1, EP R12: Library Directory, SC31-6220.

• For NCP V7 R2:

- Network Control Program V7 R2, ACF/SSP V4 R2, EP R12: Generation and Loading Guide, SC31-6221.
- Network Control Program V7 R2: Migration Guide, SC31-6258-00
- Network Control Program V7 R2, ACF/SSP V4 R2, EP R12: Resource Definition Guide, SC31-6223-01
- Network Control Program V7 R2, ACF/SSP V4 R2, EP R12: Resource Definition Reference, SC31-6224-01
- Network Control Program V7 R2, ACF/SSP V4 R2, EP R12: Library Directory, SC31-6259.

• For NCP V7 R3:

- Network Control Program V7 R3: Migration Guide, SC31-6258-01
- Network Control Program V7 R3, ACF/SSP V4 R3, EP R12: Resource Definition Guide, SC31-6223-02
- Network Control Program V7 R3, ACF/SSP V4 R3, EP R12: Resource Definition Reference, SC31-6224-02
- Network Control Program V7 R3, ACF/SSP V4 R3, EP R12: Library Directory, SC31-6262.

• For NCP V7 R4:

- Network Control Program V7 R4: Migration Guide, SC30-3786
- Network Control Program V7 R4, ACF/SSP V4 R4, EP R12: Resource Definition Guide, SC31-6223-03
- Network Control Program V7 R4, ACF/SSP V4 R4, EP R12: Resource Definition Reference, SC31-6224-03
- Network Control Program V7 R4, ACF/SSP V4 R4, EP R12: Library Directory, SC30-3785.

• For NCP V7 R5:

- Network Control Program V7 R5: Migration Guide, SC30-3833
- Network Control Program V7 R5, ACF/SSP V4 R4, EP R12: Resource Definition Guide, SC31-6223-04
- Network Control Program V7 R5, ACF/SSP V4 R4, EP R12: Resource Definition Reference, SC31-6224-04
- Network Control Program V7 R5, ACF/SSP V4 R4, EP R12: Library Directory, SC30-3832.

For NCP V7 R6:

- Network Control Program V7 R6: Migration Guide, SC30-3833-01
- Network Control Program V7 R6, ACF/SSP V4 R4, EP R14: Resource Definition Guide, SC31-6223-06
- Network Control Program V7 R6, ACF/SSP V4 R4, EP R14: Resource Definition Reference, SC31-6224-06
- Network Control Program V7 R6, ACF/SSP V4 R4, EP R14: Library Directory, SC30-3785.

For NCP V7 R7:

- Network Control Program V7 R7: Migration Guide, SC30-3889
- Network Control Program V7 R7, ACF/SSP V4 R4, EP R14: Resource Definition Guide, SC31-6223-07
- Network Control Program V7 R7, ACF/SSP V4 R4, EP R14: Resource Definition Reference, SC31-6224-07
- Network Control Program V7 R7, ACF/SSP V4 R4, EP R14: Library Directory, SC30-3971.

The following OS/2 document may be of some help:

IBM Extended Services® for OS/2 Programming Services and Advanced Problem Determination for Communications, SO4G-1007.

For the Distributed Console Access Facility (DCAF) Version 1.3 the following documents are needed:

- DCAF: Installation and Configuration Guide, SH19-4068
- DCAF: User's Guide, SH19-4069
- DCAF: Target User's Guide, SH19-6839.

To learn more about the APPN architecture, including high-performance routing (HPR), adaptive rate based flow and congestion control (ARB), dependent LU requesters/servers (DLURs/DLUSs), and other subjects, refer to:

- Inside APPN The Essential Guide to the Next-Generation SNA, SG24-3669.
- APPN Architecture and Protocol Implementations Tutorial SG24-3669.

The following Virtual Telecommunications Access Method (VTAM), may be helpful:

 Virtual Telecommunications Access Method V4R3: Resource Definition Reference, SC31-6438.

For help with TCP/IP, refer to:

• TCP/IP for MVS: Performance Tuning Guide, SC31-7188.

To learn about token-ring configurations and the IEEE 802.2 standard, refer to:

Token-Ring Network Architecture Reference, SC30-3374.

These latest NetView documents may be helpful:

- TME 10 NetView for OS/390 Version 1: Planning Guide, GC31-8226
- TME 10 NetView for OS/390 Version 1: Tuning Guide, SC31-8240.

The following NetView Performance Monitor (NPM) documents are available:

- NetView Performance Monitor: Concepts and Planning V2R2, GH19-6961-01
- NetView Performance Monitor: Concepts and Planning V2R3, GH19-6961-02
- NetView Performance Monitor: Concepts and Planning V2R4, GH19-6961-03
- NetView Performance Monitor: Concepts and Planning V3R1, GH19-4221-00.

Index

Numerics	cables (continued)	
3746-9x0 grounding 30	clocking (continued)	
7855 modem 40	external 77	
7857 modem 40	connectors, twisted-pair wire 95	
7858 modem 40	custom length 61	
7000 modem 40	direct attach 77	
_	entry/exit area dimensions 12	00
A	ESCON jumper and emergency power-off 61,	68
access unit, service processor (SPAU) 41	Ethernet port 44	
addresses	installing 61	
CLP logical address scheme 113	Line Attachment, low/medium speed 61	
logical addresses and enclosure physical	line interface attachment 33	
positions 111	low-speed attachment, LIC 11 83	
ARC	medium-speed attachment, LIC 11 83	
assemblies	multimode fibers (ESCON) 68	
B 85	network node processor attachment 71	
ARC assemblies	ordering 61	
A 84	plenum 62	
B 85, 86	RSF	
general 84	telephone cables 73	
plenum 88	RSF telephone cables 73	
X.21 bis 88	service processor 61, 71	
	token-ring	
В	8-pin connector cables and pin layouts 93	
В	MAU attachment via UTP cables 93	
bridge, Ethernet 43	under-floor 18	
	castors 12	
C	CCU 107 CD-ROM disk drive 38	
	CD-ROM disk drive 36 CD-ROM Online documentation xxiii	
cable label preparation		
EPO cables 132	central control unit 107	
high-speed lines, 3746 Network Node frame 130	CISPR Publication 22 Class A (International) (1993) 18	
LIC11 and ARC cables (3746 Network Node) 134	Class A (International) (1993) 18 Class B (International) 18	
LIC11, token-ring, EPO 133	clearance 13	
low- and medium-speed lines, 3746 Network Node	clocking	
frame 128	direct 77	
plugging sheets	external 77	
preparation 128, 132	color display	
plugging sheets, preparation 130, 131	power cords 50	
service processor REF modem 132	power distribution 49	
token-ring adapters, 3746 Network Node frame 131 why plugging sheets and cable labels are	color displays 39	
	communication line adapters	
required 127 cables	ARC cables for ARC assemblies B 86	
ARC assemblies 84, 85, 86	CLP logical address scheme 113	
plenum 88	components of Ethernet port, position of in Contro	ller
X.21 bis 88	Expansion 43	1101
ARCs (Active Remote Attachments) 61	controller ac outlet distribution box 47	
cable information 64	Controller Expansion 47	
category 5 UTP 94	Controller Expansion (FC 5023) grounding 30	
characteristics 61	current grounding 31	
clocking	cancer grounding or	
direct 77		

direct cable connections 77 distribution box, ac, for service processor 47 dual power 47 E E earthing See grounding electrostatic discharge protection 12 EN 55022 Class A (Europe) 18 entrylexit area dimensions for cables 12 ESCON jumper and emergency power-off cables 61, 68 multimode fibers 68 Ethernet bridge 43 bridge power distribution 49 cables for port 44 components, position of in Controller Expansion 43 connection box 43 maximum configuration 45 port specifications 43 Token-Ring Multi-Station Access Unit 43 F FC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 floor, railsed 12 fluses 47 G ground plates 12 grounding 30 current 31 voltage 30 group name 107 H Hayes modem 40 LEC power cords 50 inrush current 21 M M plugging sheets, preparation 127 why plugging sheets and cable labels are required 127 installation sheets examples 3746-980 basic enclosure 98 3746-990 basic enclosure 99 3746-990	customer tasks xxv	installation sheet explanations (continued) LIC types 5 and 6 114
direct cable connections 77 distribution box, ac, for service processor 47 dual power 47 E earthing See grounding electrostatic discharge protection 12 EN 55022 Class A (Europe) 18 entrylexit area dimensions for cables 12 ESCON jumper and emergency power-off cables 61, 68 multimode fibers 68 Ethernet bridge 43 bridge power distribution 49 cables for port 44 components, position of in Controller Expansion connection box 43 maximum configuration 45 port specifications 43 Token-Ring Multi-Station Access Unit 43 F FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 floor loading 13 floor, raised 12 fuses 47 G ground plates 12 grounding 30 current 31 voltage 30 group name 107 H Hayes modem 40 Why plugging sheets and cable labels are required 127 installation sheets examples 3746-900 expansion enclosure 98 3746-950 expansion enclosure 99 3746-950 bigh speed line group information (LIC12) 109 ARC cables 103 class 104 LIC11 cables 103 familiarzing yourself with 97 LCBs and ARCs explanations 110 interference standards CISPR Publication 22 Class A (Europe) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 Class B (Europe) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 Class B (Japan)		
direct cable connections 77 dual power 47 dual power 47 E earthing See grounding electrostatic discharge protection 12 EN 55022 Class A (Europe) (1994) 18 Class B (Europe) 18 Ethernet birdige 43 birdige power distribution 49 cables for port 44 components, position of in Controller Expansion 43 connection box 43 maximum configuration 45 port specifications 43 Token-Ring Multi-Station Access Unit 43 F FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 floor, raised 12 fuses 47 G ground plates 12 grounding 30 current 31 voltage 30 group name 107 H Hayes modem 40 M M M M required 127 installation sheets examples 3746-e30b lasic enclosure 98 3746-930 basic enclosure 99 3746-930 high speed line group information (LIC11) 105 A769-930 high speed line group information (LIC12) 109 ARC cables 104 LIC11 cables 103 familitarizing yourself with 97 LCBs and ARCs explanations 110 interference standards CISPR Publication 22 Class A (International) (1993) 18 Class B (Europe) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 Class B (Europe) 18 LL LCB base (LCBB) 34 expansion (LCBE) 34 grounding 30 installation sheets examples 3746-930 basic enclosure 98 3746-930 bigh speed line group information (LIC11) 105 ARC cables 104 LIC11 cables 103 familitarizing yourself with 97 LCBs and ARCs explanations 2 Class A (International) (1993) 18 Class B (Europe) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 Class B (Europe) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 Class B (Europe) 18 LCB base (LCBB) 34 expansion (LCBE) 34 grounding 30 installation sheets examples 3746-950 bigh speed line group information 109 high-speed line attachment, token-ring 76 lightning protection 17 Line Attachment, LIC 11 83 M	D	
distribution box, ac, for service processor 47 dual power 47 E earthing See grounding electrostatic discharge protection 12 EN 55022 Class A (Europe) (1994) 18 Class B (Europe) 18 enthy/exit area dimensions for cables 12 ESCON jumper and emergency power-off cables 61, 68 multimode fibers 68 Ethernet bridge 43 bridge power distribution 49 cables for port 44 components, position of in Controller Expansion 43 connection box 43 maximum configuration 45 port specifications 43 Token-Ring Multi-Station Access Unit 43 F FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 floor loading 13 floor, raised 12 fuses 47 G ground plates 12 grounding 30 current 31 voltage 30 group name 107 H H Hayes modem 40 M M M Intercence standards CISPR Publication 22 Class A (Europe) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 Class B (Europe) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 Class B (Japan) 18 Cl	direct cable connections 77	
examples E earthing See grounding electrostatic discharge protection E		·
E earthing See grounding electrostatic discharge protection 12 EN 55022 Class A (Europe) (1994) 18 Class B (Europe) 18 entry/exit area dimensions for cables 12 ESCON jumper and emergency power-off cables 61, 68 multimode fibers 68 Ethermet bridge 43 bridge power distribution 49 cables for port 44 components, position of in Controller Expansion 43 connection box 43 maximum configuration 45 port specifications 43 Token-Ring Multi-Station Access Unit 43 FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 floor loading 13 floor, raised 12 fuses 47 G ground plates 12 grounding 30 current 31 voltage 30 group name 107 H Hayes modem 40 IEC power cords 50 inrush current 21 M M 3746-acble group information (LIC11) 105 3746-900 basic enclosure 98 3746-950 basic enclosure 99 3746-950 basic enclosure 9 3746-950 basic enclosure 99 3746-950 basic enclosure 99 3746-950 basic enclosure 9 3746-950 basic en		
E earthing See grounding electrostatic discharge protection 12 EN 55022 Class A (Europe) (1994) 18 Class B (Europe) 18 entry/exit area dimensions for cables 12 ESCON jumper and emergency power-off cables 61, 68 multimode fibers 68 Ethernet bridge 43 bridge power distribution 49 cables for port 44 components, position of in Controller Expansion 43 connection box 43 maximum configuration 45 port specifications 43 Token-Ring Multi-Station Access Unit 43 FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 floor, raised 12 fuses 47 G G ground plates 12 grounding 30 current 31 voltage 30 group name 107 H Hayes modem 40 IEC power cords 50 inrush current 21 M 3746-900 basic enclosure 98 3746-9950 expansion enclosure 99 3746-9950 expansion enclosure 90 3746-9950 expansi	daa pener	
E earthing See grounding see grounding	_	
seartning See grounding electrostatic discharge protection 12 EN 55022 Class A (Europe) (1994) 18 Class B (Europe) 18 entry/exit area dimensions for cables 12 ESCON jumper and emergency power-off cables 61, 68 multimode fibers 68 Ethernet bridge 43 bridge power distribution 49 cables for port 44 components, position of in Controller Expansion 43 connection box 43 maximum configuration 45 port specifications 43 Token-Ring Multi-Station Access Unit 43 FF FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 floor loading 13 floor, raised 12 fuses 47 G ground plates 12 grounding 30 current 31 voltage 30 group name 107 H Hayes modem 40 IEC power cords 50 inrush current 21 M 3746-950 high speed line group information (LIC12) 109 ARC cables 104 LIC11 cables 103 familiarizing yourself with 97 LCBs and ARCs explanations 110 interference standards CISPR Publication 22 Class A (International) (1993) 18 Class B (International) 18 EN 55022 Class A (Europe) 18 EN 56022 Class A (Europe)	E	
See grounding electrostatic discharge protection 12 EN 55022 Class A (Europe) (1994) 18 class B (Europe) 18 entry/exit area dimensions for cables 12 ESCON jumper and emergency power-off cables 61, 68 multimode fibers 68 Ethernet bridge 43 bridge power distribution 49 cables for port 44 components, position of in Controller Expansion connection box 43 maximum configuration 45 port specifications 43 Token-Ring Multi-Station Access Unit 43 F FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 floor rolading 13 floor, raised 12 fuses 47 G ground plates 12 grounding 30 current 31 voltage 30 group name 107 H Hayes modem 40 IEC power cords 50 inrush current 21 M SARC acbles 104 LIC11 cables 103 familiarizing yourself with 97 LCBs and ARCs explanations 110 interference standards CISPR Publication 2 Class A (International) (1993) 18 Class B (International) 18 EN 55022 Class A (Europe) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 Class B (Europe) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 Class B (LGBB) 34 expansion (LCBE) 34 grounding 30 installing 34 radio frequency interference 34 specifications 35 user-supplied 19-inch rack 34 LIC 11, low/medium speed line group information 109 high-speed line attachment, token-ring 76 lightning protection 17 Line Attachment, low/medium speed cables 61 line interface attachment, LIC 11 83 M M	earthing	
electrostatic discharge protection 12 EN 55022 Class A (Europe) (1994) 18 Class B (Europe) 18 entry/exit area dimensions for cables 12 ESCON jumper and emergency power-off cables 61, 68 multimode fibers 68 Ethernet bridge 43 bridge power distribution 49 cables for port 44 components, position of in Controller Expansion connection box 43 maximum configuration 45 port specifications 43 Token-Ring Multi-Station Access Unit 43 F FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 floor loading 13 floor, raised 12 fuses 47 G ground plates 12 grounding 30 current 31 voltage 30 group name 107 H Hayes modem 40 SAPA-930 expansion inclusture group information (LIC12) 109 ARC cables 104 LIC11 cables 103 familiarizing yourself with 97 LCBs and ARCs explanations 110 interference standards CISPR Publication 22 Class A (Iternational) 1893) 18 Class B (Europe) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 VCCI Class A (Japan) 18 Class B (Europe) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 floor loading 13 floor, raised 12 fuses 47 G grounding 30 current 31 voltage 30 group name 107 H Hayes modem 40 IEC power cords 50 inrush current 21 M M SAPA-930 expansion inclusting 37 AR-950 high speed line group information (LC12) 109 ARC cables 104 LIC11 cables 103 familiarizing yourself with 97 LCBs and ARCs explanations 110 interference standards CISPR Publication 22 Class A (Icurope) (1994) 18 Class B (Europe) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 VCCI Class A (Japan) 18 Class B (Europe) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 VCCI Class A (Japan) 18 Class B (Europe) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A (Europe) (1994) 18 Class B (Europe) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A (Europe) (1994) 18 Class B (Europe) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A (Europe) (1994) 18 Class B (Europe) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A (Europe) (1994) 18 Class B (Europe) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A (Europe) (1994) 18 Class B (Europe) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A (Europe) (1994) 18 Class B (Europe) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A (Europe) (1994) 18 Class B (Europe) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A (Europe) (1994) 18 Class B (Europe) 18 FCC, Part 15,	•	
EN 55022 Class A (Europe) (1994) 18 Class B (Europe) 18 entry/exit area dimensions for cables 12 ESCON jumper and emergency power-off cables 61, 68 multimode fibers 68 Ethernet bridge 43 bridge power distribution 49 cables for port 44 components, position of in Controller Expansion of connection box 43 maximum configuration 45 port specifications 43 Token-Ring Multi-Station Access Unit 43 FC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 floor loading 13 floor, raised 12 fuses 47 G grounding 30 current 31 voltage 30 group name 107 H Hayes modem 40 IEC power cords 50 inrush current 21 M IEC power cords 50 inrush current 21		
Class A (Europe) (1994) 18 Class B (Europe) 18 entry/exit area dimensions for cables 12 ESCON jumper and emergency power-off cables 61, 68 multimode fibers 68 Ethernet bridge 43 bridge power distribution 49 cables for port 44 components, position of in Controller Expansion connection box 43 maximum configuration 45 port specifications 43 Token-Ring Multi-Station Access Unit 43 F F CC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 floor loading 13 floor, raised 12 fuses 47 G ground plates 12 grounding 30 current 31 voltage 30 group name 107 H H Hayes modem 40 IEC power cords 50 inrush current 21 M IEC power cords 50 inrush current 21	• .	3746-950 high speed line group information
Class B (Europe) 18 entry/exit area dimensions for cables 12 ESCON jumper and emergency power-off cables 61, 68 multimode fibers 68 Ethernet bridge 43 bridge power distribution 49 cables for port 44 components, position of in Controller Expansion connection box 43 maximum configuration 45 port specifications 43 Token-Ring Multi-Station Access Unit 43 Frace Cables 103 familiarizing yourself with 97 LCBs and ARCs explanations 110 interference standards CISPR Publication 22 Class A (International) (1993) 18 Class B (Europe) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 floor loading 13 floor, raised 12 fuses 47 G G ground plates 12 grounding 30 current 31 voltage 30 group name 107 H Hayes modem 40 LC1 LCB base (LCBB) 34 expansion (LCBE) 34 grounding 30 installing 34 radio frequency interference 34 specifications 35 user-supplied 19-inch rack 34 LIC 11, low/medium speed line group information 109 high-speed line attachment, token-ring 76 lightning protection 17 Line Attachment, low/medium speed cables 61 line interface attachment cables 33 locating service processor components 50 low-speed line attachment, LIC 11 83		(LIC12) 109
entry/exit area dimensions for cables 12 ESCON jumper and emergency power-off cables 61, 68 multimode fibers 68 Ethermet bridge 43 bridge power distribution 49 cables for port 44 components, position of in Controller Expansion 43 connection box 43 maximum configuration 45 port specifications 43 Token-Ring Multi-Station Access Unit 43 F FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 floor loading 13 floor, raised 12 fuses 47 G ground plates 12 grounding 30 current 31 voltage 30 group name 107 H Hayes modem 40 LIC II claims 103 familiarizing yourself with 97 LCBs and ARCs explanations 110 interference standards CISPR Publication 22 Class A (International) (1993) 18 Class B (International) 18 EN 55022 Class A (Europe) (1994) 18 Class B (Europe) 18 Class B (Lapan) 18 Class B (Japan) 18 Class B (Japan) 18 Class B (LCBB) 34 expansion (LCBE) 34 grounding 30 installing 34 radio frequency interference 34 specifications 35 user-supplied 19-inch rack 34 LIC 11, low/medium speed line group information 109 high-speed line attachment, token-ring 76 lightning protection 17 Line Attachment, low/medium speed cables 61 line interface attachment, LIC 11 83 M		ARC cables 104
ESCON jumper and emergency power-off cables 61, 68		LIC11 cables 103
jumper and emergency power-off cables 61, 68 multimode fibers 68 Ethernet bridge 43 bridge power distribution 49 cables for port 44 components, position of in Controller Expansion connection box 43 maximum configuration 45 port specifications 43 Token-Ring Multi-Station Access Unit 43 FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 floor loading 13 floor, raised 12 fuses 47 G ground plates 12 grounding 30 current 31 voltage 30 group name 107 H Hayes modem 40 I EC power cords 50 inrush current 21 LESS and ARCS explanations Tru interference standards CISPR Publication 22 Class A ((International) 18 EN 55022 Class A ((Europe) (1994) 18 Class B ((Europe) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 VCCI Class B ((Isternational) 18 EN 55022 Class A ((Istrope) 18 Class A ((Istrope) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A ((U.S.A.) 18 VCCI Class B ((Istrope) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A ((U.S.A.) 18 VCCI Class B ((Istrope) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A ((U.S.A.) 18 VCCI Class B ((Istrope) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A ((U.S.A.) 18 VCCI Class B ((Istrope) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A ((U.S.A.) 18 VCCI Class B ((Istrope) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A ((U.S.A.) 18 VCCI Class B ((Istrope) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A ((U.S.A.) 18 VCCI Class B ((Istrope) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A ((U.S.A.) 18 VCCI Class B ((Istrope) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A ((U.S.A.) 18 VCCI Class B ((Istrope) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A ((U.S.A.) 18 VCCI Class B ((Istrope) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A ((U.S.A.) 18 VCCI Class B ((Istrope) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A ((U.S.A.) 18 VCCI Class B ((Istrope) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A ((U.S.A.) 18 VCCI Class A ((Istrope) (1994) 18 Class B (Istrope) (1994) 18 Class B (Istrope) (1994) 18 Class B (Istrope) (Istrope) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A ((U.S.A.) 18 VCCI Class A ((Istrope) (1994) 18 Class B (Istrope) (1994) 18 Class B (Istrope) (1994) 18 Class B (Istrope) (Istrope) (1994) 18 Class B (Istrope) (Istrope) (1994) 18 Class B (Istrope) (Is		familiarizing yourself with 97
multimode fibers 68 Ethernet bridge 43 bridge power distribution 49 cables for port 44 components, position of in Controller Expansion 43 connection box 43 maximum configuration 45 port specifications 43 Token-Ring Multi-Station Access Unit 43 F FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 floor, raised 12 fluses 47 G G ground plates 12 grounding 30 current 31 voltage 30 group name 107 H Hayes modem 40 IEC power cords 50 inrush current 21 IEC power cords 50 inrush current 21		LCBs and ARCs explanations 110
Ethernet bridge 43 bridge power distribution 49 cables for port 44 components, position of in Controller Expansion 43 connection box 43 maximum configuration 45 port specifications 43 Token-Ring Multi-Station Access Unit 43 FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 floor loading 13 floor, raised 12 fuses 47 G ground plates 12 grounding 30 current 31 voltage 30 group name 107 H Hayes modem 40 CISS R (International) (1993) 18 Class B (Europe) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 VCCI Class A (Japan) 18 Class B (LCBB) 34 expansion (LCBE) 34 grounding 30 installing 34 radio frequency interference 34 specifications 35 user-supplied 19-inch rack 34 LIC 11, low/medium speed line group information 109 high-speed line attachment, token-ring 76 lightning protection 17 Line Attachment, low/medium speed cables 61 line interface attachment cables 33 locating service processor components 50 low-speed line attachment, LIC 11 83 M		
bridge 43 bridge power distribution 49 cables for port 44 components, position of in Controller Expansion 43 connection box 43 maximum configuration 45 port specifications 43 Token-Ring Multi-Station Access Unit 43 F FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 floor, raised 12 fuses 47 G ground plates 12 grounding 30 current 31 voltage 30 group name 107 H Hayes modem 40 LClass B (International) (1993) 18 EN 55022 Class A (Europe) (1994) 18 Class B (Europe) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 VCCI Class A (Japan) 18 Class B (Japan) 18 LLCB base (LCBB) 34 expansion (LCBE) 34 grounding 30 installing 34 radio frequency interference 34 specifications 35 user-supplied 19-inch rack 34 LIC 11, low/medium speed line group information 109 high-speed line attachment, token-ring 76 lightning protection 17 Line Attachment, low/medium speed cables 61 line interface attachment cables 33 locating service processor components 50 low-speed line attachment, LIC 11 83		CISPR Publication 22
bridge power distribution 49 cables for port 44 components, position of in Controller Expansion 43 connection box 43 maximum configuration 45 port specifications 43 Token-Ring Multi-Station Access Unit 43 FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 floor loading 13 floor, raised 12 fuses 47 G ground plates 12 grounding 30 current 31 voltage 30 group name 107 H Hayes modem 40 Class B (International) 18 EN 55022 Class A (Europe) (1994) 18 Class B (Europe) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 Class B (Japan) 18 Clas B (Japan) 18 Class B (Japan) 18		Class A (International) (1993) 18
or cables for port 44 components, position of in Controller Expansion 43 connection box 43 maximum configuration 45 port specifications 43 Token-Ring Multi-Station Access Unit 43 FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 floor, raised 12 fuses 47 G ground plates 12 grounding 30 current 31 voltage 30 group name 107 H Hayes modem 40 EN 55022 Class A (Europe) (1994) 18 Class B (Gurope) 18 FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 Class B (Japan) 18 L LCB base (LCBB) 34 expansion (LCBE) 34 grounding 30 installing 34 radio frequency interference 34 specifications 35 user-supplied 19-inch rack 34 LIC 11, low/medium speed line group information 109 high-speed line attachment, token-ring 76 lightning protection 17 Line Attachment, low/medium speed cables 61 line interface attachment cables 33 locating service processor components 50 low-speed line attachment, LIC 11 83		
cables for port 44 components, position of in Controller Expansion 43 connection box 43 maximum configuration 45 port specifications 43 Token-Ring Multi-Station Access Unit 43 FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 Class B (Japan) 18 Clas Indicate 19 Class B (Japan) 18 Class B (Japan) 18 Class B (Japan) 18 Clas Indicate	• .	
componentics, position of in Controller Expansion 43 connection box 43 maximum configuration 45 port specifications 43 Token-Ring Multi-Station Access Unit 43 FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 Class B (Japan) 18 Clas B (Japan) 18 Class B (Japan) 18 Clas Dial Class B (Japan) 18 Clas Di	•	
connection box 43 maximum configuration 45 port specifications 43 Token-Ring Multi-Station Access Unit 43 FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 Class B (Japan) 18 Class B (Japan) 18 L ECC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 floor loading 13 floor, raised 12 fuses 47 G ground plates 12 grounding 30 current 31 voltage 30 group name 107 H Hayes modem 40 FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 LCB base (LCBB) 34 expansion (LCBE) 34 grounding 30 installing 34 radio frequency interference 34 specifications 35 user-supplied 19-inch rack 34 LIC 11, low/medium speed line group information 109 high-speed line attachment, token-ring 76 lightning protection 17 Line Attachment, low/medium speed cables 61 line interface attachment cables 33 locating service processor components 50 low-speed line attachment, LIC 11 83 M	·	
FFCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 floor loading 13 floor, raised 12 fuses 47 GG ground plates 12 grounding 30 current 31 voltage 30 group name 107 H Hayes modem 40 VCCI Class A (Japan) 18 Class B (Japan) 18 L LCB base (LCBB) 34 expansion (LCBE) 34 grounding 30 installing 34 radio frequency interference 34 specifications 35 user-supplied 19-inch rack 34 LIC 11, low/medium speed line group information 109 high-speed line attachment, token-ring 76 lightning protection 17 Line Attachment, low/medium speed cables 61 line interface attachment cables 33 locating service processor components 50 low-speed line attachment, LIC 11 83 M		
Token-Ring Multi-Station Access Unit 43 Class A (Japan) 18 Class B (Japan) 18 clas (LCB) 14 expansion (LCBE) 14 e	maximum configuration 45	
FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 floor loading 13 floor, raised 12 fuses 47 G ground plates 12 grounding 30 current 31 voltage 30 group name 107 H Hayes modem 40 Class B (Japan) 18 L LCB base (LCBB) 34 expansion (LCBE) 34 grounding 30 installing 34 radio frequency interference 34 specifications 35 user-supplied 19-inch rack 34 LIC 11, low/medium speed line group information 109 high-speed line attachment, token-ring 76 lightning protection 17 Line Attachment, low/medium speed cables 61 line interface attachment cables 33 locating service processor components 50 low-speed line attachment, LIC 11 83 M M	port specifications 43	
F FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 floor loading 13 floor, raised 12 fuses 47 G ground plates 12 grounding 30 current 31 voltage 30 group name 107 H Hayes modem 40 LCB base (LCBB) 34 expansion (LCBE) 34 grounding 30 installing 34 radio frequency interference 34 specifications 35 user-supplied 19-inch rack 34 LIC 11, low/medium speed line group information 109 LIC 12 3746-950 high speed line group information 109 high-speed line attachment, token-ring 76 lightning protection 17 Line Attachment, low/medium speed cables 61 line interface attachment cables 33 locating service processor components 50 low-speed line attachment, LIC 11 83 M	Token-Ring Multi-Station Access Unit 43	
FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18 floor loading 13 floor, raised 12 fuses 47 G ground plates 12 grounding 30		ciaco D (capan)
floor loading 13 floor, raised 12 fuses 47 G G ground plates 12 grounding 30	F	1
floor loading 13 floor, raised 12 fuses 47 G G ground plates 12 grounding 30	FCC, Part 15, Class A (U.S.A.) 18	LCD
floor, raised 12 fuses 47 G G ground plates 12 grounding 30		
fuses 47 G G ground plates 12 grounding 30		
G ground plates 12 grounding 30 current 31 voltage 30 group name 107 H Hayes modem 40 G G G G G G G G G G G G G G G G G G		
ground plates 12 grounding 30 current 31 voltage 30 group name 107 H Hayes modem 40 radio frequency interference 34 specifications 35 user-supplied 19-inch rack 34 LIC 11, low/medium speed line group information 109 LIC 12 3746-950 high speed line group information 109 high-speed line attachment, token-ring 76 lightning protection 17 Line Attachment, low/medium speed cables 61 line interface attachment cables 33 locating service processor components 50 low-speed line attachment, LIC 11 83 M M		
ground plates 12 grounding 30 current 31 voltage 30 group name 107 H Hayes modem 40 specifications 35 user-supplied 19-inch rack 34 LIC 11, low/medium speed line group information 109 high-speed line group information 109 high-speed line attachment, token-ring 76 lightning protection 17 Line Attachment, low/medium speed cables 61 line interface attachment cables 33 locating service processor components 50 low-speed line attachment, LIC 11 83 M M		<u>~</u>
grounding 30 current 31 voltage 30 group name 107 H H Hayes modem 40 LIC 12 3746-950 high speed line group information 109 high-speed line attachment, token-ring 76 lightning protection 17 Line Attachment, low/medium speed cables 61 line interface attachment cables 33 locating service processor components 50 low-speed line attachment, LIC 11 83 M M	G	
grounding 30 current 31 voltage 30 group name 107 H Hayes modem 40 LIC 19-inch rack 34 LIC 11, low/medium speed line group information 109 high-speed line attachment, token-ring 76 lightning protection 17 Line Attachment, low/medium speed cables 61 line interface attachment cables 33 locating service processor components 50 low-speed line attachment, LIC 11 83 M M	ground plates 12	specifications 35
current 31 voltage 30 group name 107 H H Hayes modem 40 LIC 11, low/medium speed line group information 109 high-speed line attachment, token-ring 76 lightning protection 17 Line Attachment, low/medium speed cables 61 line interface attachment cables 33 locating service processor components 50 low-speed line attachment, LIC 11 83 M M M	· ·	
voltage 30 group name 107 H H Hayes modem 40 LIC 12 3746-950 high speed line group information 109 high-speed line attachment, token-ring 76 lightning protection 17 Line Attachment, low/medium speed cables 61 line interface attachment cables 33 locating service processor components 50 low-speed line attachment, LIC 11 83 M M		LIC 11, low/medium speed line group information 109
group name 107 H Hayes modem 40 IEC power cords 50 inrush current 21 3746-950 high speed line group information 109 high-speed line attachment, token-ring 76 lightning protection 17 Line Attachment, low/medium speed cables 61 line interface attachment cables 33 locating service processor components 50 low-speed line attachment, LIC 11 83		LIC 12
H Hayes modem 40 Hayes modem 40 Iine Attachment, low/medium speed cables 61 Iine interface attachment cables 33 Iocating service processor components 50 Iow-speed line attachment, LIC 11 83 M M		3746-950 high speed line group information 109
Hayes modem 40 Line Attachment, low/medium speed cables 61 line interface attachment cables 33 locating service processor components 50 low-speed line attachment, LIC 11 83 IEC power cords 50 inrush current 21	group hamo 107	high-speed line attachment, token-ring 76
Hayes modem 40 line interface attachment cables 33 locating service processor components 50 low-speed line attachment, LIC 11 83 IEC power cords 50 inrush current 21		lightning protection 17
Hayes modem 40 line interface attachment cables 33 locating service processor components 50 low-speed line attachment, LIC 11 83 leC power cords 50 inrush current 21	Н	Line Attachment, low/medium speed cables 61
locating service processor components 50 low-speed line attachment, LIC 11 83 leC power cords 50 inrush current 21	Haves modem 40	
low-speed line attachment, LIC 11 83 IEC power cords 50 inrush current 21	,	locating service processor components 50
IEC power cords 50 inrush current 21 M		
inrush current 21		, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
inrush current 21	IEC power cords 50	
	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	M
installation speet explanations Hidxillium	installation sheet explanations	maximum
cables for the 3745 103 Ethernet configuration 45		
cross system links and line group information 108 inrush current 21		
3 - 1 - 3 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 - 1 -	LIC types 1 to 4 114	

medium-speed line attachment, LIC 11 83	power
microcode levels required for year 2000 readiness xviii	inrush current, maximum 21
mobility 12	outlets 47
Model A	plug types 29
power distribution 49	requirements 21
specifications 41, 49	power cords
Model B	characteristics 23
power distribution 49	color display unit 50
specifications 41, 49	IEC 49, 50
modem	optical disk drive 50
7855 36, 40	service processor 50
7857 36, 40	power requirements
7858 40	3745 Model 17A 20
Hayes 40	3745 Models 21A, 31A, 41A, and 61A 19
RSF 36, 40, 72	3746 Models A11, A12, L13, L14, and L15 19
power supply 50	Controller Expansion 22
telephone cables 73	protection
10.000.000.0000.000	electrostatic discharge 12
	lightning 17
N	radio frequency interference 12
Network node	radio irequerity interiorence 12
Model A specifications 41	_
Model B specifications 41	R
network node processor cables 71	radio frequency interference 12
•	preventing (LCBs) 34
^	raised floor 12
0	RFI protection 12
optical disk drive 39	RSF
power cords 50	modem 36, 40, 72
	power supply 50
n	telephone cables 73
P	
plan view of frames 1	
planning, details of physical 1	S
plenum cables 62	service clearances 13
plugging sheets	service processor
3745 low- and medium-speed lines (LIC type 5 and	access unit (SPAU) 41
6) 148	cables 61
3745 low- and medium-speed lines (LIC types 1 to	CD-ROM disk drive 38
4) 147	color displays 39
3746 Network Node high-speed lines (LIC12) 143	component location 50
3746 Network Node low- and medium speed lines	distribution box, ac 47
(LIC11) 142	fuses 47
high-speed lines (3745 frame) 149	moving into &ncrack. 51
plugging diagram for Ethernet LAN adapters (3745	optical disk drive 39
frame) 150	power cords 50
preparation	power distribution 49
3745 Ethernet adapters 140	power outlets 47
3745 high-speed lines 139	RSF modem 36, 40
3745 low- and medium-speed lines 136	specifications 36
RSF modem for service processor 145	•
service processor LAN and EPO cables 146	technical characteristics
token-ring adapters 144	rack-mountable model 37
ports, Ethernet specifications 43	rack-mountable type 2 model 37
position of components of Ethernet port in Controller	Token-ring Multi-Station Access Unit, (MAU) 41
Expansion 43	

```
Т
telephone cables for RSF modem 73
Token-ring
  8-pin connector cables and pin layouts 93
  attachment, LIC 12 76
  Multi-Station Access Unit 43
  Multi-Station Access Unit, IBM 8229 41
  UTP media filter 93
Transfix 77
U
under-floor cabling 18
UTP
  cable
     category 5 94
     token-ring media filter 93
  for token-ring MAU attachment 93
V
VCCI
  Class A (Japan) 18
  Class B (Japan) 18
voltage grounding 30
W
weight distribution 13
X
X.25 transfix (France only) 77
Y
Year 2000
  microcode levels required xviii
  readiness xviii
```

Tell Us What You Think!

3745 Communication Controller Models A 3746 Nways Multiprotocol Controller Models 900 and 950 Planning Series:

Physical Planning
Publication No. GA27-4238-00

We hope you find this publication useful, readable, and technically accurate, but only you can tell us! Your comments and suggestions will help us improve our technical publications. Please take a few minutes to let us know what you think by completing this form. If you are in the USA, you can mail this form postage free or fax it to us at 1-800-253-3520. Elsewhere, your local IBM branch office or representative will forward your comments or you may mail them directly to us.

Overall, how satisfied are you with the information in this boo	k?	Satisfied	Dissatisfied
How satisfied are you that the information in this book is:		Satisfied	Dissatisfied
Accurate			
Complete Easy to find			
Easy to understand			
Well organized			
Applicable to your task			
Chasifia comments or much larger			
Specific comments or problems:			
Diagon follows how we can improve this hook.			
Please tell us how we can improve this book:			
Thank you for your comments. If you would like a re	oly, provide the necessar	y information	below.
Name	Address		
Company or Organization			
Company or Organization			
Phone No.			

Fold and Tape



Fold and Tape

Fold and Tape

Cut or Fold Along Line

BUSINESS REPLY MAIL
FIRST-CLASS MAIL PERMIT NO. 40 ARMONK, NEW YORK

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

Design & Information Development
Dept. CGF/Bldg. 656
International Business Machines Corporation
PO BOX 12195
RESEARCH TRIANGLE PARK NC 27709-9990

Please do not staple

Please do not staple

Fold and Tape

IBM.



Printed in the United States of America on recycled paper containing 10% recovered post-consumer fiber.

